

CHINESE GRAMMAR

CLAUDIA ROSS, Ph.D.

MORE THAN
30 MILLION
SOLD

- Simplified morphology for easier reading comprehension

- 200 sets of practice exercises

- Pronunciation key throughout

Chinese/English and
English/Chinese glossaries

Use with these courses: Beginning Chinese I Beginning Chinese II Mandarin I
 Mandarin II Elementary Chinese Intermediate Chinese



SCHAUM'S *outlines*

CHINESE GRAMMAR

OVER 30 MILLION SOLD

Related Schaum's Outlines Titles
in Foreign Languages

Chinese Vocabulary

French Grammar, 4th Ed.

French Vocabulary, 2nd Ed.

German Grammar, 3rd Ed.

German Vocabulary, 2nd Ed.

Italian Grammar, 2nd Ed.

Italian Vocabulary, 2nd Ed.

Japanese Grammar

Japanese Vocabulary

Latin Grammar

Russian Grammar

Russian Vocabulary

Spanish Grammar, 4th Ed.

Spanish Vocabulary, 2nd Ed.

Master the fundamentals of Chinese grammar with Schaum's—the high-performance study guide. It will help you cut study time, hone problem-solving skills, and achieve your personal best on exams and projects!

Students love Schaum's Outlines because they produce results. Each year hundreds of thousands of students improve their test scores and final grades with these indispensable study guides. If you don't have a lot of time but want to excel in class, this book helps you:

- Use detailed examples to solve problems
- Find answers fast
- Study quickly and more effectively
- Get the big picture without poring over lengthy textbooks

Schaum's Outlines give you the information teachers expect you to know in a handy and succinct format—without overwhelming you with unnecessary details. You get a complete overview of the subject. Plus, you get plenty of practice exercises to test your skill. Compatible with any classroom text, Schaum's let you study at your own pace and remind you of all the important facts you need to remember—fast! And Schaum's are so complete that they're perfect for preparing for graduate or professional exams!

Inside, you will find

- 200 sets of practice exercises
- Action verbs and their modifications
- Grammatical categories
- Phrase order rules

If you want top grades and a thorough understanding of Chinese grammar, this powerful study tool is the best tutor you can have!

Chapters include: Numbers • Nouns, Noun Phrases, and Noun Modification • Verbs and Verb Phrases • Adverbs • Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases • The Suffixes • The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes • Questions and Question Words • Location, Directional Movement, and Distance • Construction • Comparisons • Phrase and Clause Connection • Focusing Constructions • Speaker Perspective

Visit us at www.schaums.com

\$17.95 U.S.A. / \$24.95 CAN / £11.99 UK

The McGraw-Hill Companies

Visit us at www.books.mcgraw-hill.com



ISBN 0-07-137764-5 51795
9 780071 377645

SCHAUM'S OUTLINE OF

CHINESE GRAMMAR

CLAUDIA ROSS, Ph.D.

Professor of Chinese
Department of Modern Languages and Literature
College of the Holy Cross, Worcester, Massachusetts

SCHAUM'S OUTLINE SERIES

McGRAW-HILL

New York Chicago San Francisco
London Madrid Mexico City Milan
New Delhi San Juan Seoul Singapore
Sydney Toronto

Contents

Claudia Ross is coordinator of the Chinese language program at the College of the Holy Cross in Worcester, MA, and has 20 years' experience teaching Chinese as a second language. She received her Ph.D. in linguistics from the University of Michigan.

Schaum's Outline of
CHINESE GRAMMAR

Copyright © 2004 by McGraw-Hill. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means or stored in a data base or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

3 4 5 6 7 8 9 0 C U S / C U S 0 9 8 7 6 5

ISBN 0-07-137764-6

Conventions Used in this Book

v

Chapter 1	NUMBERS	1
-----------	---------	---

Counting
Estimates and Approximations
Ordinalization
Reading Numbers
Fractions and Percentages

Chapter 2	NOUNS, NOUN PHRASES, AND NOUN MODIFICATION	16
-----------	--	----

Nouns
Noun Phrases
Noun Modification

Chapter 3	VERBS AND VERB PHRASES	46
-----------	------------------------	----

Properties of Mandarin Verbs
Stative Verbs
Activity Verbs
Achievement Verbs

Membership in More than One Verb Category

Chapter 4	ADVERBS	88
-----------	---------	----

Characteristics of Adverbs
Common Adverbs Categorized by Meaning

Chapter 5	PREFUNCTIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	111
-----------	--	-----

Commonly Used Prepositions
Properties of Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases
The Meaning of Mandarin Prepositions
Prepositions and Verbs

Chapter 6	THE SUFFIXES 了 le , 着 zhe , AND 過/過 guo	119
-----------	--	-----

了 le
着 zhe
過/過 guo

Chapter 7	THE RESULTATIVE STRUCTURE AND POTENTIAL SUFFIXES	135
-----------	--	-----

The Resultative Structure
Potential Suffixes: -**得** deliǎo *able to* and -**不** bùliǎo *unable to*

Conventions Used in This Book

Chapter 8 QUESTIONS AND QUESTION WORDS

Questions
Question Words as Indefinites

147

Chapter 9 LOCATION, DIRECTIONAL MOVEMENT, AND DISTANCE
Location
Directional Movement
Distance

172

這本書很有意思。
这本书很有意思。

zhè běn shù hěn yǒu yìsī.
This book is very interesting.

Chapter 10 THE 把 CONSTRUCTION

190

Chapter 11 COMPARISONS

195

More Than
Less Than
Equal To
Not Equal To
Including the Activity in the Comparison

208

Chapter 12 PHRASE AND CLAUSE CONNECTION

Important Features of Phrase and Clause Connections
Addition
Disjunction
Sequence and Simultaneity
Contrast
Conditionality
Cause-and-Effect

233

Chapter 13 FOCUSING CONSTRUCTIONS
Topicalization
除了 chūle ... 以外 yǐwài
递/连 lián
Passives

252

Chapter 14 SPEAKER PERSPECTIVE
Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases
Sentence Final Particles

275

ANSWERS TO EXERCISES
Index

Presentation of Examples

Examples are presented in traditional characters, simplified characters, and pinyin romanization.

When no character in an example has a simplified form, a single line of characters is presented.

我弟弟很高。

wǒ diàdi hěn gāo.

My younger brother is very tall.

In pinyin examples, capitalization is used only for proper names.

我很喜歡吃中國飯。

wǒ hěn xǐhuān chī Zhōngguó fàn.

I like to eat Chinese food very much.

Ungrammatical Forms

Ungrammatical examples are occasionally presented to indicate improper usage. All ungrammatical forms are preceded by ②. Ungrammatical forms are always presented along with grammatical forms.

我的朋友 ②朋友的我
wǒ de péngyou péngyou de wǒ
my friend

Conventions used in tone marking

neutral tone

This book follows the conventions of Beijing Mandarin in the use of neutral tone:

- The classifier 倏/个ge is presented in neutral tone.
- The second syllable of most nouns occurs in neutral tone: (e.g. 妹妹 mèimei 朋友 péngyou)
- The infixes 不/bù and 得/dé in resultative verb compounds are presented as bu and de (e.g. 看得見 kànđejian able to see, 看不到 mǎibùdào unable to buy).

tone sandhi

In spoken Mandarin, certain *tone sandhi* (tone change) rules apply.

- Third tone change: Third tone is spoken as second tone when it occurs before another third tone (e.g. nǐ hǎo becomes ní hǎo, wǒ xǐhuan becomes wó xǐhuan).

In this book, third tone change is represented in the tone spelling only if the change occurs within a single word. It is not indicated if the change occurs across word boundaries. In this way, the two syllable words 可以 and 水果 are written in pinyin as kěyǐ and shuǐguǒ (not as kěyǐ and shuǐguǒ) but the two word phrase 很好 is written in pinyin as hěn hǎo, not hén hǎo.

- Special tone changes:

不 bù becomes bú when it occurs before a fourth toned syllable (e.g. bù huì becomes bú huì, bù dù becomes bú dù).

In this book, fourth tone change is represented in the tone spelling within and across word boundaries.

- The numbers — yī one, 七 qī seven, and 八 bā eight sometimes change to second tone before a fourth toned syllable (e.g. 一个 yīge, yíkuài).

In this book these numbers are always represented in first tone.

Conventions for writing de

- the marker of noun modification:

圖書館的書

túshūguǎn de shū
the library's books

地 de

- the marker of pre-verbal modification of activity verbs:

偷偷地看

tōutou de kàn
secretly take a look

得 de

- the marker of post-verbal modification of activity verbs:

跑得快

pǎo de kuài
run fast

- the potential infix in resultative verb compounds:

吃得完
chīdewán
able to finish eating

- the marker of extent modification of adjectival stative verbs:

他累得站不起来。
tā lèi de zhànbùqǐlai.
He is so tired that he can't stand up.

Numbers

COUNTING

Numbers 1-99

When numbers are used for counting, they occur without any additional words:

一	yī	1
二	èr	2
三	sān	3
四	sì	4
五	wǔ	5
六	liù	6
七	qī	7
八	bā	8
九	jiǔ	9
十	shí	10
○	líng	0 OR 零

The numbers 11-99 are built upon 1-10 as follows:

十一	shíyī	11	三十	sānshí	30
十二	shí'er	12	三十五	sānshíwǔ	35
十三	shísan	13	四十	sìshí	40
十四	shísì	14	四十五	sìshíwǔ	45
十五	shíwǔ	15	五十	wǔshí	50
十六	shíliù	16	五十五	wǔshíwǔ	55
十七	shíqī	17	六十	liùshí	60
十八	shíbā	18	六十五	liùshíwǔ	65
十九	shíjiǔ	19	七十	qīshí	70
二十	èrshí	20	七十五	qīshíwǔ	75
二十一	èrshíyī	21	八十	bāshí	80
二十二	èrshí'ér	22	八十五	bāshíwǔ	85
二十三	èrshísān	23	九十	jǐushí	90
二十四	èrshísì	24	九十五	jǐushíwǔ	95
二十五	èrshíwǔ	25	九十九	jǐushíjiǔ	99

二 èr and 两 liǎng

- When counting numbers without a following classifier, the number “2” is always 二 èr:
 - yī, 一 èr, 三 sān ...

(For more on classifiers, see Chapter 2: Nouns, Noun Phrases, and Noun Modification.)
- When the number “2” is part of the number 12, 22, 32, 42, 52, 62, 72, 82, or 92, it is always 二 èr:

十二 shí èr、二十二 èrshí èr、三十二 sānshí èr ...

In all other cases, when the number “2” occurs before a classifier, it is 两/西 liǎng. (See Chapter 2: Nouns, Noun Phrases, and Noun Modification.)

兩本書	兩個人
liǎng běn shù	liǎng ge rén

two books

two people

1. Complete the chart by converting the Chinese numbers to Arabic numerals and the Arabic numerals to Chinese numbers:

Arabic Numeral	Chinese Number
1.	二十三 èr shí sān
2.	二十七 èr shí èr
3.	二十八 èr shí bā
4.	五十六 wǔ shí liù
5.	八十八 bā shí bā
6.	七十四 qī shí sì
67	

In Mandarin, the numbers 10,000 and higher are counted in terms of the number of 千/万 wàn *ten thousands*, followed by the number of thousands, the number of hundreds, the number of tens, and the number of ones. The number 24,000 is read 两万四千/两万四千 liǎng wàn sì qiān *two ten thousands (and) four thousands*. Numbers between 10,000 and 1,000,000 are illustrated here.

	1-900 ten-thousands	thousands	hundreds	tens	ones
89, 667	八萬/万 bā wàn	九千 jiǔ qiān	六百 lù bǎi	六十 lìù shí	七 qī
273,561	二十七萬/万 èr shí èr wàn	三千 sān qiān	五百 wǔ bǎi	六十 lìù shí	一 yī
892,894	八十九萬/万 bā shí jiǔ wàn	两千 liǎng qiān	八百 bā bǎi	九十 jiǔ shí	四 sì
2,735,610	兩百七十三萬/万 liǎng bǎi qī shí sān wàn	五千 wǔ qiān	六百 lù bǎi	一十 yī shí	
8,979,999	八百九十七萬/万 bā bǎi jiǔ shí qī wàn	九千 jiǔ qiān	九百 jiǔ bǎi	九十 jiǔ shí	九 jiǔ

Numbers 100-10,000

百	bǎi	100
千	qiān	1,000

萬/万	wàn	10,000
-----	-----	--------

Numbers through 9,999 are constructed as they are in English:

1 Million, 10 Million, 100 Million

1,000,000 百萬/万
bǎi wàn
(one hundred ten-thousands)

10,000,000 千萬/万
qiān wàn
(one thousand ten-thousands)

100,000,000 億/亿
yì
(or) 萬萬/万万
wàn wàn
one hundred million

Note: When the number “2” occurs before 百 bǎi *hundred*, 千 qiān *thousand*, or 萬/万 wàn *ten thousand* it may be either 二 èr or 矢/俩 liǎng.

200: 二百 èr bǎi, 兩百/兩百 liǎng bǎi

A note on reading ○/零 líng:

An empty hundreds place or tens place may be read as ○/零 líng. Compare the following two numbers:

3,053 三千零五十三
sān qiān líng wǔshísān

70,182 七萬一百八十二
qī wàn yí bǎi bāshí èr

When reading a number with a series of zeroes, the word ○/零 líng is only included once:

2,001 兩千○一
liǎng qiān líng yī

2. Complete the chart by converting the Chinese numbers to Arabic numerals and the Arabic numerals to Chinese numbers:

Arabic Numeral	Chinese Number
1. 6,700,000	五萬一千六百二十二 wǔ wàn yī qiān liù bǎi èr shí èr
2.	五百一十六百二十二 wǔ bǎi yí shí liù bǎi èr shí èr

3.	9,202,002	
4.		三百八十四萬兩千一百五十六 三百八十四萬兩千一百五十六 sān bǎi bā shí sì wàn liǎng qiān yī bǎi wǔ shí liù
5.	74,000	
6.		四十九萬一百三十 四十九萬一百三十 sì shí jiǔ wàn yī bǎi sān shí
7.	2,000,000	
8.		兩百五十五萬六千九百零二 兩百五十五萬六千九百零二 liǎng bǎi wǔ shí wàn liù qiān jiǔ bǎi líng èr
9.	438,059	
10.		九十九萬三千兩百五十一 九十九萬三千兩百五十一 jiǔ shí jiǔ wàn sān qiān liǎng bǎi wǔ shí yī

ESTIMATES AND APPROXIMATIONS

差不多 chàbuduō almost

差不多 chàbuduō + *Number* + classifier indicates that a value is near but less than the specified number. 差不多 chàbuduō is always followed by a Number + Classifier. (See Chapter 2: Nouns, Noun Phrases, and Noun Modification, and Chapter 4: Adverbs.)

1. 他差不多八十歲。
tā chàbuduō bāshí suì.

He is almost 80 years old.

他差不多八十歲。
tā chàbuduō bāshí suì.

五萬一千六百二十二
wǔ wàn yī qiān liù bǎi èr shí èr

今天特別熱。差不多四十度。

今天特別熱。差不多四十度。

jintian tèbié rè. chàbudo sìshí dù.

Today it is particularly hot. It is almost forty degrees.

左右 zuǒyóu about/more or less

Number + classifier 左右 zuǒyóu indicates that a value is a little more or a little less than the specified number. 左右 zuǒyóu is always preceded by a Number + Classifier.

他八十歲左右。

他八十歲左右。

ta bāshí suì zuǒyóu.

He is about 80 years old.

今天四十度左右。

jìntian sìshí dù zuǒyóu.

Today it is about forty degrees.

以上 yǐshàng above, 以下 yǐxià below

Number 以上 yǐshàng indicates that a value is equal to or greater than the specified number. *Number 以下 yǐxià* indicates that a value is equal to or less than the specified number. 以上 yǐshàng and 以下 yǐxià may directly follow a number alone, or a noun phrase that includes a number.

五十以上

wǔshí yǐshàng

fifty or more

wǔshí yǐxià

fifty or less

三十塊錢以上

sānshí kuài qián yǐshàng

thirty dollars or more

四十塊錢以上

sìshí kuài qián yǐshàng

thirty dollars or more

三十快錢以下
三十快錢以下
sānshí kuài qián yǐxià
thirty dollars or less

多 duō

Number 多 duō indicates that a value is greater than the specified number. If the number is part of a noun phrase, 多 duō precedes the classifier.

五十多

wǔshí duō

more than fifty

三十多塊錢

sānshí duō kuài qián

more than thirty dollars

3. Complete the chart to express the following expressions in Chinese and English.

1. 75 people more or less	
2.	一千以上
3. almost 100 people	yī qiān yǐshàng
4.	三百塊錢左右
5. 75 or more people	sān bǎi kuài qián zuǒyóu
6.	差不多三百塊錢。 差不多三百塊錢。
7. 40 or fewer	chàbudo sān bǎi kuài qián.

8.		一百多塊錢 yī bǎi duō kuài qián
9. more than 75		
10.		三百以下 sān bǎi yǐ xià

ORDINALIZATION

Ordinalization refers to sequencing or ordering: *first, second, third, etc.*

1	—	2	二 èr	3	三 sān	4	四 sì	5	五 wǔ
1 st	第一 dì yī	2 nd	第二 dì èr	3 rd	第三 dì sān	4 th	第四 dì sì	5 th	第五 dì wǔ

4. Rewrite the Chinese ordinal numbers into English and the English ordinal numbers into Chinese:

1. 3rd
2. 8th
3. 10th
4. 2nd
5. 99th
6. 第五 dì wǔ
7. 第二十 dì èr shí
8. 第九 dì jiǔ
9. 第一 dì yī
10. 第四 dì sì

Note: In standard Mandarin as spoken in Beijing and other parts of China, the number '1' is pronounced *yāo*.

6810-2232 liù bā yí líng - èr èr sān èr

3551-8867 sān wǔ wǔ yī - bā bā liù qī
sān wǔ wǔ yāo - bā bā liù qī

5. Read the following phone numbers. Provide your responses in pinyin.

1. 6839-1234

2. 5334-2387

3. 8833-1111

4. 119 (fire-emergency in China)

5. 114 (information in China)

6. 13521056666 (cell phone number)

FRACTIONS AND PERCENTAGES

Fractions and Percentages Expressed as 'Parts of the Whole'

Fractions and percentages are expressed as a 'parts of the whole' as follows:

A 分 zhī B

A fēn zhī B

B parts of A parts

五分之一

wǔ fēn zhī yī

one part of five — one fifth

Notice that in Chinese, the 'whole' is always the first number in the expression.

If the 'whole' is expressed in terms of the number 100, then a percentage of the whole is expressed as 'parts of one hundred'.

READING NUMBERS

In certain contexts, numbers are read as individual digits. These include numbers which are part of phone numbers, addresses, licenses, passports, and other documents used for identification. The reading of phone numbers is illustrated here. Decimal fractions described below in this chapter are also read as individual digits.

百分之四十 bǎi fēn zhī sì shí	40 parts of 100 ... 40%
百分之十 bǎi fēn zhī shí	10 parts of 100 ... 10%
百分之五十 bǎi fēn zhī wǔshí	50 parts of 100 ... 50%

百分之九十九 bǎi fēn zhī jiǔshí jiǔ	99 parts of 100 ... 99%
百分之一 bǎi fēn zhī yī	1 part of 100 ... 1%

If the ‘whole’ is expressed as a number smaller than 100, then a fraction of the whole is expressed as ‘parts of the whole.’

四分之一 sì fēn zhī yī	1 part of 4 ... 1/4
三分之二 sān fēn zhī èr	2 parts of 3 ... 2/3
八分之五 bā fēn zhī wǔ	5 parts of 8 ... 5/8
十分之一 shí fēn zhī yī	1 part of 10 ... 1/10

6. Complete the chart to express the following fractions and percentages in Chinese and in Arabic numerals.

1. 百分之六十 bǎi fēn zhī liùshí	
2.	18%
3. 百分之八十九 bǎi fēn zhī bāshí jiǔ	
4.	66%
5. 百分之三十二 bǎi fēn zhī sānshí èr	
6.	35%
7. 四分之三 sì fēn zhī sān	
8.	11/12
9. 十分之九 shí fēn zhī jiǔ	
10.	4/7

Questioning Percentages and Fractions

The question words 多少 duōshao and 几几 jǐ are used to ask about the value of a percent or fraction. In the response, a number replaces the question word. (See Chapter 8: Questions and Question Words.)

Percentages

- Q: 百分之多少 ? A: 百分之七十
bǎi fēn zhī duōshao? bǎi fēn zhī qishí
what percent? 70%
- Q: 百分之多少 ? A: 百分之二十四
bǎi fēn zhī duōshao? bǎi fēn zhī èrsìshí sì
what percent? 24%

Fractions

- A 分之幾 ?
A 分之几 ?
A fēn zhī jǐ?
- Q: 五分之幾 ?
五分之几 ?
wǔ fēn zhī jǐ?
How many fifths?
- A: 五分之二
五分之二
wǔ fēn zhī èr
two-fifths (2/5)
- Q: 九分之幾 ?
九分之几 ?
jiǔ fēn zhī jǐ?
How many ninths?
- A: 九分之五
九分之五
jiǔ fēn zhī wǔ
five-ninths (5/9)

7. Answer the following questions in Chinese based on the number in parentheses.

1. 百分之多少 ? (91%)
bǎi fēn zhī duōshao?
2. 百分之多少 ? (26%)
bǎi fēn zhī duōshao?

3. 百分之多少? (49%)

bǎi fēn zhī duōshao?

4. 八分之幾? (78)

八分之几?

5. 十分之幾? (10/11)

十分之几?

shíyī fēn zhī jǐ?

6. 五分之幾? (4/5)

五分之几?

wǔ fēn zhī jǐ?

Decimal Fractions

Decimal fractions are expressed by 點 / 点 followed by the decimal number.

The decimal number is read as a series of individual digits.

Notes: If a number begins with a decimal point, the number may optionally be read as ○ 點 / ○ 点. In decimal fractions, the number '2' is always read as 二 èr.

.5 (○) 點五

(○) 点五

(líng) diǎn wǔ

.75 (○) 點七五

(○) 点七五

(líng) diǎn qī wǔ

.758 (○) 點七五八

(○) 点七五八

(líng) diǎn qī wǔ bā

.7508 (○) 點七五〇八

(○) 点七五〇八

(líng) diǎn qī wǔ líng bā

一點八 / 一 点八

yí diǎn bā

1.8

三十四點六九

sāishí sì diǎn liù jiǔ

8. Complete the chart to express these decimal fractions in Chinese and in Arabic numerals.

1.	○ 黑〇五 / ○ 点〇五 líng diǎn líng wǔ
2.	2.3
3.	一點一〇〇三 / 一 点一〇〇三 yí diǎn yí líng líng sān
4.	.666
5.	○ 黑八六 / ○ 点八六 líng diǎn bā líng liù
6.	9.7
7.	○ 黑八〇六 / ○ 点八〇六 líng diǎn bā líng liù
8.	1.05
9.	二十二點二二 / 二十二 点二二 èrshí èr diǎn èr èr
10.	8.4

Discounts: Percentage Off Total Price

Discounts are expressed as the percentage of the original price at which goods are offered as follows:

Number + 折 zhé

Note: Typically, Arabic numerals rather than Chinese numbers are used with 折 zhé to express discounted price.

九折 jiǔ zhé	(9 折) (9 zhé)	10% off
八折 bā zhé	(8 折) (8 zhé)	20% off
二點五折 èr diǎn wǔ zhé	(2.5 折) (2.5 zhé)	75% off
五折 wǔ zhé	(5 折) (5 zhé)	50% off

10. Compute the discounted price for each of the following items.

Original Price	Discount	Discounted Selling Price
shoes: \$100	8 折	
sweater: \$60	9 折	
jacket: \$150	4 折	
gloves: \$20	2.5 折	
socks: \$8	5 折	

The verb used to express discounts is 打 *dǎ*. The following examples express the percentage and the discounted selling price of an item whose original price was \$100.

Note: The question word 級/几 *Jǐ* is used to ask the percentage of the discount.

Original Price	Percentage of Discount? 打幾折/打几折?	Discount	Discounted Selling Price
\$100	打九折 dǎ jiǔ zhé	10%	\$90
\$100	打八折 dǎ bā zhé	20%	\$80
\$100	打二點五折 dǎ èr diǎn wǔ zhé	75%	\$25
\$100	打五折 dǎ wǔ zhé	50%	\$50
\$100	打二折 dǎ èr zhé	80%	\$20

9. Express these discounts in Chinese using 打 *zhé*.

1.	40% off
2.	25% off
3.	60% off
4.	65 % off
5.	90% off

CHAPTER 2

Nouns, Noun Phrases, and Noun Modification

NOUNS

Mandarin has three kinds of nouns: common nouns, pronouns, and proper nouns.

Common Nouns

Common nouns may be concrete or abstract

書 / ㄕ shū book, 車 / ㄔ chē car, 意思 yìsi meaning, etc.

Pronouns

Singular

我 wǒ 1st person (I/me)

你 nǐ 2nd person (you)

您 nín 2nd person polite form (you)

他/她/它 tā 3rd person (he, she, it/him, her, it)

自己 zìjǐ reflexive pronoun (self)

Plural

我們 / 我们 wǒmen 1st person (we, us)

咱們 / 咱们 zánmen 1st person inclusive
(includes speaker and addressees) (we, us)

你們 / 你们 nǐmen 2nd person (you)

他們 / 他们, 它們 / 它们 tāmen
3rd person (they, them)

Proper Nouns

中國 / 中国 Zhōngguó China

美國 / 美国 Měiguó America

孫中山 Sun Zhōngshān Sun Yat-sen

Features of Mandarin Nouns

- Number: Common nouns are typically neutral with respect to number and have no separate singular and plural forms. Common nouns referring to people may be suffixed with the plural suffix 孩子们 / 孩子 men (孩子 men / 孩子们 háizimen children, 学生们 / 学生们 xuéshèngmen students), though the use of the plural suffix is relatively uncommon.* Pronouns have distinct singular and plural forms.

* In this form, nouns cannot be further modified by a number + classifier phrase. In addition, they are definite in reference.

- Gender: Common nouns are neutral with respect to gender and Mandarin does not distinguish ‘masculine,’ ‘feminine,’ and ‘neuter’ nouns. Pronouns are neutral in their spoken form. As illustrated above, gender is distinguished in the third person in the contemporary *written* language: 他 tā he, him / 她 tā she, her / 它 tā it.
- Grammatical case: In Mandarin, there are no separate forms of nouns associated with their use as subject (nominative case), possessive (genitive case), object (accusative case), etc. There is no distinction among pronouns equivalent to English I/my/me, etc.

Special Uses of Pronouns

咱们 / 咱们 zánmen and 我们 / 我们 wǒmen

Mandarin spoken in and around Beijing makes a distinction between *inclusive we* and *exclusive we*.

Inclusive we includes the speaker and the addressee and is expressed with the word 咱们 / 咱们 zánmen:
咱们走吧！
咱们走吧！
zánmen zǒu ba!
Let's go!

咱们都是中國人。
咱们都是中国人。
zánmen dōu shì Zhōngguo rén.
We are all Chinese.

- Exclusive we* includes the speaker and not necessarily the addressee and is expressed with the word 我们 / 我们 wǒmen:
我們想跟你談談。
我们想跟你谈谈。
wǒmen xiǎng gèn nǐ tán tǎn.
We want to speak with you.

我们都喜歡學中文。
我们都喜欢学中文。
wǒmen dōu xǐ欢 xué Zhōngwén.
We all like to study Chinese.

Even in Beijing, 我们/wǒmen/ may be used for both senses of *we*.

自己 zìjǐ self

Mandarin has a single reflexive pronoun, 自己 zìjǐ self, which is unmarked for person or gender. 自己 zìjǐ has the following uses.

It occurs as an object to mark identity of reference with the subject:

你在外國一定得照顧自己。

nǐ zài wàiguó yìdèng děi zhànguò zìjǐ.
When you are in a foreign country you must take care of yourself.

我不喜歡自己。

wǒ bù xǐhuān zìjǐ.
I don't like myself.

It can follow a personal pronoun for emphasis, especially for contrastive emphasis. (See section on modification of pronouns below for additional examples using 自己 zìjǐ.)

我希望他們結婚，可是我自己不想結婚。

我希望他們結婚，可是我自己不想結婚。

wǒ xiāngzuò tāmēn jiéhūn, kěshì wǒ zìjǐ bù xiǎng jiéhūn.
I hope they will get married, but I myself don't plan to get married.

這是我自己的事。

這是我自己的事。

zhè shì wǒ zìjǐ de shì.
This is my affair.

1. Complete the following sentences according to the English translations by adding the appropriate pronoun or pronouns.

1. ____ 是大學生。
____ is a college student.

____ slì dàxuéshēng.
They are college students.

2. ____ 也是大學生。
____ is also a college student.

____ yě shì dàxuéshēng.
We are also college students.

3. ____ 認識 ____ 嗎？

____ 認識 ____ 嗎？

____ rènshí ____ ma?
Do you know them?

4. ____ 念中文嗎？

____ 念中文嗎？

Do you study Chinese?

5. ____ 妹妹、姐姐都念中文。____ 不念中文。

____ 妹妹、姐姐都念中文。____ 不念中文。

____ mèimeい, jiějie dōu niàn Zhōngwén. ____ bú niàn Zhōngwén.
My younger sister and older sister both study Chinese. I myself don't study Chinese.

6. ____ 去唱卡拉OK 吧！

____ qù chàng kǎlāOK ba!
Let's go sing karaoke!

7. ____ 是我校幾個最聰明的女生。

____ 是我校幾個最聰明的女生。

They are *a few of the brightest women students in our school.*

8. ____ 今天晚上有事，不能跟 ____ 吃飯。

____ 今天晚上有事，不能跟 ____ 吃饭。

____ jīntiān wǎnshàng yǒu shì, bù néng gēn ____ chī fàn.
I'm busy tonight. I can't eat with you.

9. ____ 是哪位？(your polite)

____ shì nǎi wèi?
Who are you?

10. ____ 還只是孩子，必須有別人管 ____ 。

____ 還只是孩子，必須有別人管 ____ 。

____ hái zhǐ shì háizi, bìxì yǒu bìrén guǎn ____.
You are still only a child. You have to have other people taking care of you.

NOUN PHRASES

A noun phrase (NP) is a noun and any modifiers of the noun. NPs serve as the topic of a sentence, the subject of a sentence, the direct or indirect object of a verb, or the object of a preposition.

Topic 這個學校，女孩子比男孩子多一點。
這個學校，女孩子比男孩子多一点。
这个学校，女孩子比男孩子多一点。
zhè ge xuéxiào, nǚ háizi bǐ nán háizi duō yídiǎn.

(In) this school, there are somewhat more girls than boys.

Subject

那個大學很有名。
那个大学很有名。
那个大学很有名。
nà ge dàxué hěn yǒu míng.
That college is very famous.

Direct Object of a verb

我昨天晚上看了一個電影。
我昨天晚上看了一个电影。
我昨天晚上看了一个电影。
wǒ zuòtiān wānshàng kàn le yī ge diànyǐng.
I saw a movie last night.

Indirect object of a verb

我不想給你找麻煩。
我不想给你找麻烦。
我不想给你找麻烦。
wǒ bù xiǎng gěi nǐ zhǎo máfan.
I don't want to give you trouble.

Object of a preposition

我每個週末都跟朋友一起玩。
我每个周末都跟朋友一起玩。
我每个周末都跟朋友一起玩。
wǒ měi ge zhōumò dōu gēn péngyǒu yìqǐ wán.
I have fun with my friends every weekend.

Note: Verb phrases (VPs) may also be used like NPs. In this case, the VPs are considered 'nominalized.'

吃饭跟睡觉是人類最基本的需求。
吃饭跟睡觉是人类最基本的需求。
吃饭跟睡觉是人类最基本的需求。
chī fan gēn shuì jiào shì rénlèi zuì jǐ běn de xūqiú.
Eating and sleeping are human beings' basic needs.

Identity of Reference

There are two ways to indicate identity of reference between NPs in Mandarin: omission and pronominalization.

Omission

Topic When NPs with identical reference occur in the same grammatical role (subject or object) in a series of sentences, all instances of the NP after the first one are often omitted.*

NPs with identical reference are both subjects:

我弟弟是大學生，明年就畢業了。
我弟弟是大学生，明年就毕业了。
我弟弟是大学生，明年就毕业了。
wǒ dìdì shì dàxuéshēng, míngnián jiù bìyè le.
My younger brother is a college student. Next year he graduates.

Q: 那本書怎麼樣？ A: 很有意思。

那本書怎么样？
nà běn shū zěnmeyàng?
How is that book?
hěn yǒu yìsi.
(It is) very interesting.

NPs with identical reference are both objects:

Q: 你認識王明嗎？ A: 簾識。
你认识王明吗？
nǐ rènshí Wáng Míng ma?
Do you know Wang Ming?
rènshí.
I know (him).

When a NP refers to an inanimate object, a second reference in subject or object position is always omitted.

Q: 你吃過日本菜嗎？ A: 没吃過。
你吃过日本菜吗？
nǐ chīguò Rìběn cài ma?
Have you eaten Japanese food before?
méi chīguo.
I've never eaten (it) before.

Pronominalization

When NPs with identical reference occur in different grammatical roles in a series of sentences, the second occurrence is typically represented with a pronoun.

王明很和氣。我想你一定會喜歡他。
王明很和气。我想你一定会喜欢他。
Wáng Míng hěn héqì. wǒ xiǎng nǐ yǐdǐng huì xǐhuān tā.
Wang Ming is very friendly. I think you will certainly like him.

*Omission of an NP marks it as the topic of the passage.

2. Complete the sentences with a pronoun or omission. For some sentences, either choice is possible.

1. 這個東西叫煎餅。你吃過了 —— 沒有？(它/φ)

这个东西叫煎饼。你吃过了 —— 没有？(它/φ)

This is called a fried pancake. Have you eaten one before?

2. 他很好。人人都尊敬 —— 。(他/φ)

他人很好。人人都尊敬 —— 。(他/φ)

tā rén hěn hǎo, rénnéng dōu zūnjìng — . (tā/φ)

He is a really good person. Everyone respects him.

3. 中國高中生特別努力， — 下課以後就回家學習。(他們/φ)

中国高中生特别努力， — 下课以后就回家学习。(他们/φ)

Zhōngguó gāozhōngshēng tèbié nǔlì, — xià kè yǐhòu jiù huíjiā xuéxí.

(tāmen/φ)

Chinese high school students are especially hard working. After they get out of class they go home and study.

4. Q:請問，你是誰？A:我是你的表哥，你不認識 — 嗎？(我/φ)

请问，你是谁？我是你的表哥，你不认识 — 吗？(我/φ)

Q: qǐngwèn, nǐ shì shéi? A: wǒ shì níde biāogē nǐ bù rěnzhì — ma?

(wǒ/φ)

Q: Excuse me. Who are you? A: I am your cousin. Don't you recognize me?

5. 她還沒看過那個電影。她今天晚上要跟你去看 — 。(它/φ)

她还没看过那个电影。她今天晚上要跟你去看 — 。(它/φ)

tā hái méi kàn guò nà ge diànyǐng. tā jīntiān wǎnshàng yào gēn nǐ qù kàn — . (tā/φ)

She still hasn't seen that movie. She wants to see it with you tonight.

NOUN MODIFICATION

Noun modification is the description of a noun by another word or phrase. The noun which is being described is the 'head noun' and the description is the 'noun modifier'. *In the Mandarin noun phrase, the modifier always precedes the head noun.*

There are two types of noun modifiers in Mandarin, those that involve numbers and specifiers (這/这 zhe this or 那/那 nà that), and those that involve any other kind of phrase. Both types of noun modification structures are described below.

Modification Involving Numbers and Specifiers

Modification Involving Numbers: the Number+Classifier phrase

Common nouns may be described in terms of quantity: *one book, two books, several books, etc.* In Mandarin, numbers may not directly precede a noun. Numbers precede classifiers, and the number+classifier phrase precedes the noun.

一本書

一本书

yī běn shù

one book

三個人

三个人

sān ge rén

three people

Quantifiers, words which indicate an indefinite quantity, may also modify the noun. The following quantifiers must be followed by a classifier.

幾本書

几本书

jǐ běn shù

several books

每個人

每个人

měi ge rén

every person

The phrase —些 yí xiè several/a few may also serve as a quantifier phrase.

一些書

一些书

yíxiè shù

several books

Some classifiers indicate a specific meaning (for example, the shape of a noun, or some information about the quantity of a noun) and are always used with a particular noun in a particular context.

一條河
yī tiáo hé
one (long thin) river

一塊肉
yī kuài ròu
one lump of meat

一張紙
yī zhāng zhǐ
one sheet of paper

Some classifiers provide information about the container of a noun, or its size or weight.

一斤苹果
yī jīn píngguǒ
*one pound of apples**

一杯茶
yī bēi chá
one cup of tea

When the noun does not have a specialized classifier, the classifier 个/个 ge is used.

這個問題不太大。我想我們一定可以解決。
這個問題不太大。我想我們一定可以解決。
zhè ge wèntí bù tài dà. wǒ xiǎng wǒmen yìdèng kěyǐ jiějúé.
This problem isn't too big. I think we can certainly solve it.

我每個週末都回家。
我每個週末都回家。
wǒ měi ge zhōumò dōu huí jiā.
I go home every weekend.

3 Match each number + classifier with the appropriate noun.

1. 一條/一條 yī tiáo long thin shape a. 車/辆 chē car
2. 兩張/兩張 liǎng zhāng flat surface b. 人 rén person
3. 三張/三張 sān zhāng flat surface c. 筆/支 bì pen
4. 四輛/四輛 sì liàng vehicle d. 桌子 zhuōzi table
5. 五個/五個 wǔ ge general classifier e. 書/冊 shū book
6. 六枝 liù zhī long narrow things f. 飯/飯 fàn rice
7. 七把 qī bǎ things which can be grasped with the hand g. 汽水 qìshuǐ soda (pop)
8. 八本 bā běn volume h. 紙/紙 zhǐ paper
9. 九瓶 jiǔ píng bottle i. 河 hé river
10. 十碗 shí wǎn bowl j. 椅子 yǐzi chair

4 Rewrite these noun phrases in Mandarin.

1. 12 pencils
2. 5 cups of tea
3. 22 people
4. 3 bowls of rice
5. 2 cars
6. 7 rivers
7. 8 books
8. 2 chairs
9. 4 sheets of paper
10. 5 bottles of soda

Omission of the Head Noun

When the identity of the noun is clear from the context, the number + classifier phrase can occur without a following noun.

- Q: 你要買幾枝筆？
nǐ yào mǎi jǐ zhī bì?
How many pens do you want to buy?
- A: 兩枝。
liǎng zhī
Two.

Classifiers Which Always Occur without a Head Noun

Some classifiers have nominal meaning and do not have an associated noun.

These include the following words:

年	nián	year
天	day	
位	wèi	person (polite classifier for people) <i>I lived in Japan for a year.</i>

* One jin is .5 kilograms, slightly more than a pound.

她一天沒吃飯。

她一天没吃饭。

tā yī tiān méi chī fàn.
She didn't eat for a whole day.

哪位是誰？

哪位是谁？

nǎ wèi shì shéi?
Who is that person?

Using the Word 半 bàn *half* with Classifiers

半 bàn is used in the expression 'a number and a half'. It follows the classifier:

一個半月 / 一个半月 yī ge bàn yuè *1 ½ months*, 五年半 wǔ nián bàn 5 ½

years

When indicating half of a noun, 半 bàn precedes the classifier:

半個月 / 半个月 bàn ge yuè *half a month*, 半年半 bàn nián *half a year*

5. Rewrite these number phrases in Mandarin, being careful to put the word 半 bàn in the right place.

1. 2 1/2 days
2. 4 1/2 hours
3. 1/2 bowl of rice
4. 1 1/2 pounds of rice
5. 3 1/2 months
6. 9 1/2 years
7. 12 1/2 minutes
8. 1/2 a book
9. 5 1/2 bottles of soda
10. 1/2 a year

Specifiers

The most common specifiers are 那 nà (alternatively pronounced nèi) *that/those* and 这 zhè (alternatively pronounced zhèi) *this/these*.

Like numbers, specifiers cannot immediately precede a noun. They are followed by a number + classifier phrase, or by a classifier.

這三本書

這三本
zhè sān běn shù
these three books

這本書

这本书

那三本書

那三本书

nà sān běn shù
those three books

那本書

nà běn shù
that book

Specifiers may also be used to refer to a physical, concrete object. In this usage, they can occur without a following classifier.

那是什麼？

那是什么？

nà shì shémmne?
What's that?

那是毛筆。

那是毛笔。

nà shì máobi.

That's a Chinese writing brush

Specifiers with Literary Usage

本 běn and 才 mǒu may be used as specifiers in formal, literary contexts. incorporates 'our' and 'this.'

本校成立於一八四五年。
běn xiào chénglì yú yī bā sì wǔ nián.
This school of ours was established in 1845.

羊肉串兒是本店的特產。
yánggròu chuànr shì běn diàn de tèchǎn.
Lamb kebabs are the specialty of our store.

某 mǒu refers to an entity whose identity is not revealed by the speaker.

這些是某人的東西。

這些是某人的東西。

zhè xiē shì mǒurén de dōngxi.

These are somebody's things. (These things belong to someone.)

你說的張某是誰？是張明嗎？

你说的张某是谁？是张明吗？

nǐ shuō de Zhāng mǒu shì shéi? shì Zhāng Míng ma?

Who is this Zhang so-and-so that you are talking about? Is it Zhang Ming?

6. Rewrite these NPs in Mandarin:

1. four pencils

2. three friends

3. 17 books

4. that cup of tea

5. these 10 years

7. Rewrite these NPs in English:

1. 二十五張紙/二十五張紙 èrshíwǔ zhāng zhǐ

2. 那六把椅子 nà liù bǎ yǐzi

3. 十二個月/十二个月 shí èr gè yuè

4. 這五天/这五天 zhè wǔ tiān

5. 那兩個人/那两个人 nà liǎng ge rén

Time and Money

Calendar Time

The Days of the Week

星期一 xīngqī yī

禮拜一/礼拜一

Monday

星期二 xīngqī èr

禮拜二/礼拜二

Tuesday

星期三 xīngqī sān

禮拜三/礼拜三

Wednesday

星期四 xīngqī sì

禮拜四/礼拜四

Thursday

星期五 xīngqī wǔ

禮拜五/礼拜五

Friday

星期六	xīngqī liù	禮拜六/礼拜六	lǐbài liù	Saturday
星期天	xīngqī tiān	禮拜天/礼拜天	lǐbài tiān	Sunday
星期日	xīngqī rì	禮拜日/礼拜日	lǐbài rì	

Years

Years are presented as a series of single digits followed by 年 nián year.

1997: 一九九七年 yī jiǔ jiǔ qī nián

1492: 一四九二年 yī sì jiǔ èr nián

1911: 一九一一年 yī jiǔ yī yī nián

The Months of the Year

一月	yīyuè	January	七月	qīyuè	July
二月	èryuè	February	八月	bāyuè	August
三月	sānyuè	March	九月	jǐuyuè	September
四月	sìyuè	April	十月	shíyuè	October
五月	wǔyuè	May	十一月	shíyiyuè	November
六月	liùyuè	June	十二月	shíérnyuè	December

Note: The names of the months of the year do not include a classifier. However, when months are counted, a classifier occurs: 一個月/一個月 ge yuè one month, 兩個月/兩個月 liǎng ge yuè two months, etc.

Dates of the Month

Dates of the month are indicated with a number plus the classifier 號/号 hào (spoken/informal form) or 日 rì (literary/formal form): 三號/三号 sān hào or 三日 sān rì the third (day of the month).

Reciting Dates

Dates are always presented from the largest to the smallest unit:

Year	Month	Date of the month
August 22, 2001	二零零一年 èr líng líng yī nián	八月 bāyuè 二十二號/号(日) èrshí èr hào (rì)
May 3, 1995	一九九五年 yī jiǔ jiǔ wǔ nián	五月 wǔyuè 三號/号(日) sān hào (rì)
December 31		十二月 shí èr yuè 三十一號/号(日) sānshí yī hào (rì)

8. Write the Chinese dates in English and the English dates in Chinese.

1. January 1, 1980

2. 一九六九年七月二十日

yī jiǔ liù jiǔ nián qī yuè èr shí rì

3. July 4, 1776

4. 一九九九年十二月三十一日

yī jiǔ jiǔ jiǔ nián shí èr yuè sānshíyī rì

5. October 5, 2002

6. 二零零三年十一月二十五號

二零零三年十一月二十五號
èr líng líng sān nián shíyī yuè èrshíwǔ hào

7. February 14, 1997

8. 一九四五年五月八號

一九四五年五月八號
yī jiǔ sì wǔ nián wǔyüè bāhào

9. August 16, 1970

10. 一八六三年十一月十九日

yī bā liù sān nián shíyī yuè shí jiǔ rì

Clock Time

The units of time in Mandarin are 鐘頭/钟头 zhōngtóu and 小時/小时 xiǎoshí. hour, 分 fēn minute, and 秒 miǎo second.*

三個鐘頭/三个钟头
sān gè zhōngtóu
三個小時/三个小时
sān gè xiǎoshí
3 hours
3 hours

十二分(鐘/钟)
shí èr fēn (zhōng)
12 minutes

二十秒
èrshí miǎo

20 seconds

When reciting time, time on the hour (o'clock time) is expressed using the expression 點/diǎn dot. Clock time phrases may end with the noun 鐘/钟 zhōng, around Beijing.

兩點/两点 (鐘/钟)
liǎng diǎn (zhōng)

六點/点 (鐘/钟)
liù diǎn (zhōng)
6 o'clock

十二點/点 (鐘/钟)
shí èr diǎn (zhōng)

12 o'clock

Note: When reading or reciting time, 2 o'clock is read as 兩點/两点 liǎng diǎn.
When time includes minutes, it can be recited as follows:
minutes past the hour (with optional 過/guò):

七點過十分
qī diǎn guò shí fēn
10 minutes past 7 (7:10)

* Different regions of China have different preferences for 鐘頭/钟头 zhōngtóu and 小時/小时 xiǎoshí. 鐘頭/钟头 zhōngtóu is used in Beijing and northern China. 小時/小时 xiǎoshí is used in Taiwan.

兩點過二十分
兩 点 过 二 十 分
liǎng diǎn guò èrshí fēn
20 minutes past 2 (2:20)

過/過 guò can be omitted from the phrase, as can the classifier 分 fēn.

十點二十
十 点 二 十
shí diǎn èrshí
10:20

六點十五
六 点 十 五
liù diǎn shíwǔ
6:15

兩點四十五
兩 点 四 十 五
liǎng diǎn sìshíwǔ
2:45

■ 差 chà + minutes to the hour

差 chà + minutes can occur before the hour or after the hour. 差 chà and 分 fēn cannot be omitted from the expression.

■ 差 chà + minutes before the hour:

差 () 分 () 點
差 () 分 () 点
chà () fēn () diǎn
差 五 分 九 点
差 wǔ fēn jiǔ diǎn
5 minutes to 9 (8:55)

差十分八點
差 十 分 八 点
chà shí fēn bā diǎn
10 minutes to 8 (7:50)

差 chà + minutes occurring after the hour:

() 點 差 () 分
() 点 差 () 分
() diǎn chà () fēn
九點差五分
九 点 差 五 分
jiǔ diǎn chà wǔ fēn
5 minutes to 9 (8:55)

八點差十分
八 点 差 十 分
bā diǎn chà shí fēn
10 minutes to 8 (7:50)

Expressions used with clock time

半 bàn half
半個鐘頭/半个钟头
半個小時/半個 小时
bàn ge zhōngtóu
bàn ge xiǎoshí

一個半鐘頭/一个半钟头
一個半小時/一个半小时
四點半/四点半
yī ge bàn zhōngtóu
yī ge bàn xiǎoshí
sì diǎn bàn
half past 4 (4:30)

一刻鐘/一刻钟
三點/点一刻
四點/点三刻
五點/点差一刻
yī kè zhōng
sān diǎn yī kè
sì diǎn sān kè
wǔ diǎn chà yī kè
15 minutes
a quarter past three (3:15)
45 minutes after 4 (4:45)
a quarter to five (4:45)

Note: There is no expression 二刻 èr kè. 30 minutes is expressed as 半 bàn or as 三十 分 sānshí fēn.

9. Complete the chart by converting the times to Arabic numerals or Mandarin. Use 過過 guò or 差 chà in the Mandarin times where indicated.

1. 2:15 (過過 guò)	
2.	十一點差五分 十一點差五分 shíyī diǎn chà wǔ fēn
3. 3:45 (差 chà)	
4.	五點過十七分 五點過十七分 wǔ diǎn guò shíqī fēn
5. 7:50 (差 chà)	
6.	十二點半 十二點半 shí'èr diǎn bàn
7. 8:20 (過過 guò)	
8.	六點差兩分 六點差兩分 liù diǎn chà liǎng fēn
9. 4:10	
10.	差一分九點 差一分九點 chà yī fēn jiǔ diǎn

Money

Money is indicated as a series of number + classifier phrases followed by the noun 錢/錢 qián *money*. The units of money in informal spoken Mandarin are 塊/块 kuài *dollar*, 毛 máo *dime* (*one-tenth of塊/块 kuài*) and 分 fēn *penny** (*one-tenth of a 毛 máo*). In formal, written Mandarin the word for dollar is 元 yuán and the word for dime is 角 jiǎo.† When 元 yuán and 角 jiǎo are used, the noun 錢/錢 qián does not occur in the phrase. As illustrated below, 元 yuán and 角 jiǎo are generally when the monetary expression can be expressed exclusively in either 元 yuán or 角 jiǎo.

Monetary values of less than one dollar are expressed as follows:

	毛 máo	分 fēn
75 cents	七毛 qī máo	五分 wǔ fēn
12 cents	一毛 yī máo	二分 èr fēn
36 cents	三毛 sān máo	六分 liù fēn

	角 jiǎo
\$.30	三角 sān jiǎo

Monetary values of a dollar or more are expressed as follows:

	塊/块 kuài	毛 máo	分 fēn	錢/錢 qián
\$17.35	十七塊/块 shí qī kuài	三毛 sān máo	五分 wǔ fēn	錢/錢 qián
\$6.22	六塊/块 liù kuài	二毛 èr máo	二分 èr fēn	錢/錢 qián

* 分 fēn as a unit of money is rapidly disappearing in China.

† 元 yuán and 角 jiǎo are the words printed on Chinese currency.

元	yuán
八十七	shí qī Yuán

The noun 钱 / qián is optional in a money phrase. If it is omitted, the classifier 毛 / máo or 分 / fēn *penny* may be omitted if it is the last classifier in the number phrase.

	塊/块 kuài	毛 máo	分 fēn
\$17.35	十七塊/块 shí qī kuài	三毛 sān máo	五 wǔ
\$23.81	二十三塊/块 èrshísān kuài	八毛 bā máo	一 yī
\$48.90	四十八塊/块 sìshí bā kuài	九 jiǔ	
\$ 6.20	六塊/块 liù kuài	二 èr	

10 Complete the chart so that all prices are presented in English and Chinese.

Price in English	Price in Mandarin
\$ 18.25	
	四十九塊八毛四分錢 四十九块八毛四分钱 sìshíjiǔ kuài bā máo sì fēn qián
\$519.31	
	兩百三十五塊四 两百三十五块四 liǎng bǎi sānshíyī wǔ kuài sì
\$117.62	
	七百二十六元 七百二十六元 qī bǎi èrshíliù yuán
1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	

Noun Modifiers That End with -er

Common nouns may be modified by pronouns, nouns, NPs, verbs, VPs, subject + verb sequences, and clauses.

- The modifier is typically followed by 'the' de
 - The modifying phrase (*modifier* + 'the') always precedes the head noun regardless of the properties of the modifier.

When the modifier is a pronoun, noun, or an adjectival stative verb, the order of the modifier and the head in Mandarin is the same as in the English translation

When the modifier is a pronoun, noun, or an adjectival stative verb, the order of the modifier and the head in Mandarin is the same as in the English translation.

Modifier is	
<i>Pronoun*</i>	
我 wǒ <i>1st person singular</i>	我的書 wǒ de shū <i>my book</i>
你 nǐ <i>2nd person singular</i>	你的地址 nǐ de dìzhǐ <i>your address</i>
自己 zìjǐ <i>person singular</i>	自己的事 zìjǐ de shì <i>your own business</i>

* There is no separate set of possessive pronouns in Mandarin.

Modifiers involving other kinds of verbs or a clause also precede the head noun.

Notice, however, that their English equivalents follow the noun, typically in the form of a relative clause. There is no Mandarin equivalent for relative pronouns (*who*, *whom*, *which*) or the complementizer (*that*) which introduces the modifier in English relative clauses. (See Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.)

Modifier is

<i>Verb</i>	吃 chī	吃的人 chī de rén	可怜的我 / 可怜的我 kělián de wǒ poor me
<i>PP + Verb</i>	跟我来 gēn wǒ lái	跟我来的那个人 gēn wǒ lái de nà ge rén	美丽的她 / 美丽的她 měilì de tā beautiful her
<i>or Verb Phrase</i>	跟我来 gēn wǒ lái	跟我来的那个人 gēn wǒ lái de nà ge rén	美丽的她 / 美丽的她 měilì de tā beautiful her
<i>Object</i>	賣花 mài huā	賣花的那个人 mài huā de nà ge rén	聪明的你 / 聰明的你 cōngming de nǐ smart, you/ clever, you
<i>Verb + Subject + Verb</i>	我吃 wǒ chī	我吃的東西 wǒ chī de dōngxi	偉大的中國 / 伟大的中国 wěidà de Zhōngguó great China
<i>clause *</i>	工資高 gōngzī gāo	工資高的職業 gōngzī gāo de zhíyè	壯觀的大峽谷 / 壮观的大峡谷 zhuàngguān de Dà Xiágǔ magnificent Grand Canyon
<i>I eat</i>	<i>things that I eat</i>	<i>wǒ chī de dōngxi</i>	The reflexive pronoun 𠂌 已 zìjǐ can be modified by a personal pronoun. 𠂌 de never occurs between a personal pronoun and 自己 zìjǐ. (See section on <i>Special Uses of Pronouns</i> above for additional examples using 自己 zìjǐ.)
			別人要他來，可是他自己不願意來。 bìren yào tā lái, kěshì tā zìjǐ bù yuàn yì lái. <i>Other people want him to come but he himself is not willing to come.</i>
			很多人有愛好，可是我自己沒有愛好。 hěn duō rén yǒu àihào, kěshì wǒ zìjǐ méi yǒu àihào. <i>Lots of people have a hobby, but I don't have a hobby.</i>

In formal, written texts, when the modifier includes an activity verb, 才 suō can occur before the verb.

李老師所寫的書都很好。

李老師所寫的書都很好。
Lǐ láo shī suǒ xiě de shū dōu hěn hǎo.

The books that teacher Li wrote are very good.

Pronouns and proper nouns are more restricted than common nouns in their choice of modifiers. Pronouns can be modified by a very limited number of stative verbs:

* When the modifier is a clause, the verb of the clause is typically a stative verb.

可憐的我 / 可怜的我
kělián de wǒ
poor me

美麗的她 / 美丽的她
měilì de tā
beautiful her

聰明的你 / 聰明的你
cōngming de nǐ
smart, you/ clever, you

偉大的中國 / 伟大的中国
wěidà de Zhōngguó
great China

壯觀的大峽谷 / 壮观的大峡谷
zhuàngguān de Dà Xiágǔ
magnificent Grand Canyon

別人要他來，可是他自己不願意來。
bìren yào tā lái, kěshì tā zìjǐ bù yuàn yì lái.

很多人有愛好，可是我自己沒有愛好。
hěn duō rén yǒu àihào, kěshì wǒ zìjǐ méi yǒu àihào.

A noun may be modified by any number of modifying phrases. Each modifying phrase occurs in succession, and the last one is followed by the head noun itself:

那個高高瘦瘦的人
nà ge gāo gāo shòu shòu de rén
that very tall, very thin person

The Order of Modifying Phrases

A noun may be modified by any number of modifying phrases. Each modifying phrase occurs in succession, and the last one is followed by the head noun itself:

Modifiers which involve specifiers and numbers generally occur at the beginning of the NP, though they may occur closer to the head noun to contrast one NP with another.

高高瘦瘦的那個人
gāo gāo shòu shòu de nà ge rén
that very tall very thin person (in contrast to some other person)

Modifiers which describe inherent, permanent characteristics of a noun tend to occur closest to the head noun.

那個穿大衣的白頭髮的老人
nà ge chuān dàyī de bái tóufa de lǎo rén
that old white haired man who is wearing an overcoat

11. Put the Mandarin phrases in the proper order to correspond to the English translations.

1. 書的我中文
shù de wǒ Zhōngwén
my Chinese book

2. 中國書出的
Zhōngguó shū chū de
a book published in China

3. 水果很甜的
shuǐguǒ hěn tián de
very sweet fruit

4. 朋友男的你姐姐
péngyou nán de nǚ jiějie
your older sister's boyfriend

5. 事的我喜欢做
shì de wǒ xǐhuān zuò
things I like to do

6. 國家的多人口
國家的多人口
Guójia de duō rénkǒu
a country with a large population
 7. 車製造的在美國
車製造的在美國
chē zhìzào de zài Měiguó
a car manufactured in America
 8. 那個女孩子說話的跟你
那個女孩子說話的跟你
nà ge nǚ háizi shuō huà de gēn nǐ
that girl who is speaking with you
 9. 一個大學某城市的麻州
一個大學某城市的麻州
yī ge dàxué mǒu chéngshì de Mázhōu
a college in a certain city in Massachusetts
 10. 中文考試的很難
中文考試的很難
Zhōngwén kǎoshí de hěn nán
a very difficult Chinese exam
12. Translate the following noun phrases into English.
1. 那部很有意思的電影
那部很有意思的電影
nà bù hěn yǒu yìsī de dànyǐng
 2. 這副日本製造的很貴的耳環 (製造/制造 zhìzào manufacture,
這副日本製造的很貴的耳環 耳環/耳环 ěrhuán earrings)
zhè fù Rìběn zhìzào de hěn guì de ěrhuán
 3. 我的兩個哥哥
我的两个哥哥
wǒ de liǎng ge gēge
 4. 一些關於中國的書 (關於/關於 guānyú regarding)
一些关于中国的书
yīxiè guānyú Zhōngguó de shù

5. 這個很複雜的中國字 (複雜/复杂 fùzá complicated)

这个很复杂的中国字

zhè ge hěn fùzá de Zhōngguó zì

6. 很貴的手錶 (手錶/手表 shǒubìào wrist watch)

很贵的手表

hěn guì de shǒubìào

7. 我念的那本書

我念的那本书

wǒ niàn de nà běn shū

8. 昨天考試的學生

昨天考试的学生

zuótiān kǎoshì de xuésheng

9. 紅顏色的筆

红颜色的笔

hóng yánse de bì

10. 學中文的學生

学中文的学生

xué Zhōngwén de xuésheng

NP Modification without 的 de

Modifiers which are numerals or specifiers must end in a classifier. Modifiers which belong to other categories usually end in 的, but in some cases, 的 may be absent. Here are some common conditions in which 的 is absent.

- The modifier and the head noun form a compound word or a name for a thing:

白宫	Báigōng	<i>the White House</i>
西瓜	Xīguā	<i>watermelon</i>
大门/大門	Dàmén	<i>front door/main gate</i>
万里長城/万里长城	Wàn lǐ Chángchéng	<i>the Great Wall</i>

Note: For this kind of phrase, 的 de may occur between the modifier and the head with no change in meaning.

- The modifier is a one-syllable stative verb commonly associated with the noun. Notice that the meaning may shift when 的 de is included.

好朋友	好的朋友
hǎo péngyoud	hǎo de péngyou
<i>good friend</i> (<i>refers to a specific friend</i>)	<i>a good friend</i> (<i>a type of friend</i>)
白顏色	白的顏色
bái yánse	bái de yánse
<i>white</i>	<i>whitish color</i>

When a stative verb is preceded by an intensifier, 的 de must occur between the modifier and the noun:

很好的朋友	⑤很好朋友
hěn hǎo de péngyou	hěn hǎo péngyou
<i>very good friend</i>	<i>very good friend</i>

If 的 is inserted between the modifier and the head, the phrase is unacceptable or the meaning of the phrase changes:

④白的宮

bái de gōng

a white palace

④西的瓜

dà de mén

a big door

萬里的長城

wàn lǐ de

a ten thousand mile wall

万里的长城

chángchéng

太舊的衣服
tài jiù de yīfú
clothing that is too old

⑧太舊衣服
tài jiù yīfú
clothing that is too old

Omission of the Head Noun in 的 de Modification Structures

The head noun may be omitted when its identity is clear from context. Typically, the identity of a noun is clear if it has been mentioned in the preceding discourse:

Q: 橘子怎麼樣？ A: 大的很甜。小的有一點酸。

橘子怎么样？ 大的很甜。小的有一点酸。

dà de hěn tián. xiǎo de yǒu yídiǎn suān.

The big ones are very sweet.

The small ones are a little sour.

The head noun may also be omitted when the modifier + 的 refers to an entity with the properties of the modifier:

掃地的
sǎodì de
something which sweeps the floor = a broom

or
one who sweeps the floor = a floor sweeper

算命的
suànmìng de
one who figures out someone's life = a fortune teller

要飯的
yàofan de
one who begs for food = beggar

送信的
sòngxìn de
one who delivers letters = letter carrier

送報的
sòngbào de
one who delivers newspapers = newspaper delivery person

13. Name the entity referred to in each of the following phrases.

1. 做飯的/做饭的 zuò fàn de

2. 看病的 kàn bìng de

3. 開車的/开车的 kāi chē de

4. 有錢的/有钱的 yǒu qián de

5. 沒錢的/没钱的 méi qián de

6. 坐飛機的/坐飞机的 zuò fēijī de

7. 剃頭的/剃头的 tì tóu de

8. 賣東西的/卖东西的 mài dōngxi de

9. 做衣服的 zuò yīfú de

10. 念書的/念书的 niànshù de

CHAPTER 3

Verbs and Verb Phrases

PROPERTIES OF MANDARIN VERBS

All Mandarin verbs have the following properties:

Full Predicate Status

Mandarin verbs can serve as the predicate in a complete sentence without an intervening helping verb such as the verb ‘to be’ in English.

我喜歡他。

我喜歡他。

wǒ xǐhuān tā.
I like him.

那個東西太貴。

nà ge dōngxi tài guì.
That thing is too expensive.

Negation

Mandarin verbs can be directly preceded by negation. The words that are used for negation in Mandarin are 不 bù and 沒 méi.

妹妹不高。

mèimei bù gāo.
Younger sister is not tall.

我昨天没吃晚飯。

wǒ zuòtiān méi chī wǎnfàn.
Yesterday, I didn't eat dinner.

Verb-NEG-Verb Questions

Mandarin verbs can be used as the repeated word in Verb-NEG-Verb questions

(See Chapter 8: Questions and Question Words.) Note that Mandarin verbs are not always translated by verbs in English. This will be discussed in more detail below.

你喜歡不喜歡他？

你喜歡不喜歡他？

nǐ xǐhuān bù xǐhuān tā?
Do you like him?

電影票貴不貴？

電影票貴不貴？

dìányǐng piào guì bù guì?
Are movie tickets expensive?

你會不會說英文？

你會不會說英文？

nǐ huì bù huì shuō Yīngwén?
Can you speak English?

他是不是日本人？

tā shì bù shì Rìběn rén?
Is he Japanese?

你該不該給小費？

你該不該給小費？

nǐ gāi bù gāi gěi xiǎofei?
Should you give a tip?

留學以前，應該不應該身體檢查？

liúxué yǐqián, yīnggāi bù yīnggāi shēntǐ jiǎnchá?
Before studying abroad, should you have a physical exam?

Inflection

Mandarin verbs are not inflected. A single verb form is used regardless of the tense, aspect, or modality of the sentence, and regardless of the number or gender of the subject.*

他/她/他們吃了水果。

他/她/他們吃了水果。

wǒ zuòtiān méi chī wǎnfàn.
He/she/they ate fruit.

* In inflected languages, verbal inflection also serves to identify the inflected word as a verb and to prevent it from being used in any other category.

他想吃水果。

tā xiǎng chī shuǐguǒ.
He wants to eat fruit.

水果讓孩子給吃完了。

shuǐguǒ ràng háizi gěi chīwán le.
The fruit was eaten up by the children.

Based on their meanings and grammatical properties, Mandarin verbs can be grouped into one of three types of verb categories: *Stative Verbs*, *Activity Verbs*, and *Achievement Verbs*. Each of these types of verbs has certain properties which are not shared by the other verb types. Activity verbs and achievement verbs have some properties in common because they both describe *actions*, that is, things that *happen* (e.g. eating, speaking, sitting down, selling, breaking, etc.) Stative verbs do not describe actions and do not share many properties with the other two verb types.

Grammatical Category Shifts

A very important feature of Mandarin is that a word may belong to more than one category depending on the way it is used in a sentence.* For example, the word 病 bìng may function as a verb or a noun.

他有病。

tā yǒu bìng.
He has an illness. (noun)

他逼了。

tā bìng le.
He has become ill. (verb)

The word 给/送 gěi may function as either a preposition or a verb. (See Chapter

5: Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases.)

他昨天給他的女朋友買了花兒。

他昨天給他的女朋友买了花儿。

tā zuótiān gěi tā de nǚ péngyǒu mǎi le huār.
Yesterday he bought flowers for his girlfriend. (preposition)

你在中國不必給小費。

你在中國不必給小費。

nǐ zài Zhōngguó bùbì gěi xiǎofèi.
In China, you don't have to give tips. (verb)

Many verbs belong to more than one verb category. The meaning of a verb is slightly different depending upon the category in which it is used. For example, the verb 穿 chuān may behave in some contexts like a stative verb, and in others like an achievement verb. As a stative verb it refers to a state and means *to be wearing*. As an achievement verb it refers to an action and means *to put on*. One of the most challenging tasks in learning Chinese is to become familiar with the different ways in which a single word may be used.

Keep in mind that each verb category is identified by a group of properties. If a verb has one of the properties associated with a verb category, it will have all of the properties that characterize that category of verbs. A list of some common verbs which function in two or more categories is provided at the end of this chapter.

STATIVE VERBS

Stative verbs are words which describe states of being. Some stative verbs can be translated as adjectives in English. These are referred to here as *adjectival stative verbs*. Other stative verbs are translated as English verbs. These are referred to here as *non-adjectival stative verbs*. Examples of adjectival and non-adjectival stative verbs include the following.

adjectival stative verbs

好	hǎo	good
貴 / 貴	guì	expensive
快	kuài	fast
着急	zháojí	anxious
高興 / 高興	gāoxìng	happy
舒服	shūfù	comfortable
緊張 / 緊張	jǐnzhāng	nervous
大	dà	big
白	bái	white (and other color words)
甜	tián	sweet
簡單 / 簡單	jiǎndān	simple

* This is primarily due to the absence of inflection in Mandarin.

non-adjectival stative verbs

喜歡/喜歡	xǐhuan	<i>like</i>
像	xiàng	<i>resemble</i>
願意/愿意	yuàn yì	<i>willing</i>
怕	pà	<i>fear</i>
愛/愛	ài	<i>love</i>
尊敬	zūnjìng	<i>respect</i>
想念	xiǎngniàn	<i>miss, long for</i>
懂	dǒng	<i>understand</i>

In addition, the linking verbs 是 shì and 喜 喜 xǐ, the words which indicate ability and possibility 會/会 hui, 能 néng, and 可以 kěyǐ, and the obligation words 應該/应该 yīnggāi, 該/该 gāi and 應當/应当 yīngdāng, are stative verbs. They will be discussed in more detail at the end of this section.

Many textbooks and grammars label adjectival stative verbs as ‘adjectives.’

While these words have the descriptive meaning associated with adjectives, they differ from adjectives in a language like English in one very important way:

Adjectival stative verbs are not preceded by a ‘helping verb’ such as the verb ‘to be’ in English.*

Compare these correct and incorrect uses of adjectival stative verbs.

Correct**Incorrect****她很高。**

② **她 是(很)高。**

tā hěn gāo.
She is tall.

電影票貴。

② **電影票 是(很)貴。**

diànyǐng piào guì.
Movie tickets are expensive.

Movie tickets are expensive.

Properties of All Stative Verbs

All stative verbs have the following properties:

Negation

The word which negates stative verbs is 不 bù. 沒 méi (or 沒有 méiyǒu) is not used to negate stative verbs, with one exception. The verb 有 yǒu may only be negated by 沒 méi.

她不高。	③ 她沒高。
tā bù gāo. <i>She is not tall.</i>	ta méi gāo.
電影票不貴。	④ 電影票沒貴。
diànyǐng piào bù guì. <i>Movie tickets are not expensive.</i>	diànyǐng piào méi guì.
公共汽車不快。	⑤ 公共汽車沒快。
gōnggòng qìchē bù kuài. <i>Buses are not fast.</i>	gōnggòng qìchē méi kuài.

我不喜歡他。	⑥ 我沒喜歡他。
我不喜欢他。	我沒喜欢他。
wǒ bù xǐhuan tā. <i>I don't like him.</i>	wǒ méi xǐhuan tā.
他不願意坐飛機。	⑦ 他沒願意坐飛機。
他不願意坐飞机。	他沒愿意坐飞机。
tā bù yuàn yì zuò feiji. <i>He is not willing to travel by plane.</i>	tā méi yuàn yì zuò fēijī.

⑧ 他沒是大學生。	⑨ 他沒是大學生。
他不是大學生。	他沒是大学生。
tā bù shì dàxuésheng. <i>He is not a college student.</i>	tā méi shì dàxuésheng.
他不會開車。	⑩ 他沒會開車。
他不会开车。	他沒会开车。
tā bù huì kāi chē. <i>He isn't able to drive a car.</i>	tā méi huì kāi chē.

* The verb 是 shì may precede a stative verb, but only for contrastive emphasis. When 是 shì occurs before a stative verb, it functions to emphasize the predicate and to contrast it with some belief or expectation held by the speaker or listener.

她是很高！

She is tall!

She is tall! (... and until I saw her I didn't believe you when you said she was...)

⑥他没有女朋友。
tā bù yǒu nǚ péngyou.
He doesn't have a girlfriend.

Aspectual Suffixes

Stative verbs cannot be suffixed with the aspectual suffixes V- 了 le or 過 guo.

The reason for this is that they are not compatible with the meanings contributed by these suffixes. (For a detailed presentation of the meanings associated with these suffixes, see Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/過 guo.) As the last example below shows,

a stative verb can be followed by 了 le, but only if it is the last word in the sentence. In this case, 了 le must be interpreted as sentence final 了 le in which it contributes the meaning of change of state or new situation. 了 le after a stative verb never contributes the meaning of completion or conclusion associated with V- 了 le.

我喜歡他。
我喜歡他。
我喜歡了他。
wǒ xǐhuān tā.
I like him.

他是大學生。
他是大學生。
他是大學生。
tā shì dàxuéshēng.
He is a college student.

他會開車。
他会开车。
他会开车。
tā huì kāi chē.
He is able to drive a car.

他很着急。
tā hěn zháojí.
He is very anxious.

This sentence cannot have the meaning

associated with the use of
V- 了 le. It cannot mean
'He was very anxious.'

他沒有女朋友。
tā méi yǒu nǚ péngyou.
He doesn't have a girlfriend.

Aspectual Suffixes

Stative verbs cannot be suffixed with the aspectual suffixes V- 了 le or 過 guo.

The reason for this is that they are not compatible with the meanings contributed by these suffixes. (For a detailed presentation of the meanings associated with these suffixes, see

Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/過 guo.) As the last example below shows, a stative verb can be followed by 了 le, but only if it is the last word in the sentence. In this case, 了 le must be interpreted as sentence final 了 le in which it contributes the meaning of change of state or new situation. 了 le after a stative verb never contributes the meaning of completion or conclusion associated with V- 了 le.

我喜歡他。
我喜歡他。
我喜歡了他。
wǒ xǐhuān tā.
I like him.

他是大學生。
他是大學生。
他是大學生。
tā shì dàxuéshēng.
He is a college student.

他會開車。
他会开车。
他会开车。
tā huì kāi chē.
He is able to drive a car.

他很着急。
tā hěn zháojí.
He is very anxious.

This sentence cannot have the meaning

associated with the use of
V- 了 le. It cannot mean
'He was very anxious.'

Some stative verbs can be suffixed with the durational aspect marker 着 zhe.
着 zhe emphasizes the general continuation of the state and not the specific length of the duration. Stative verbs which can be suffixed with 着 zhe may often also be used as achievement verbs. See the last section of this chapter for additional examples of this kind of verb.

桌子上放着很多東西。

桌子上放着很多东西。

Zhuōzi shàng fāngzhe hěn duō dōngxi.

There are a lot of things sitting on the table.

她戴着很貴的耳環。

她戴着很贵的耳环。

tā dài zhe hěn guì de ērhuán.

She's wearing very expensive earrings.

Duration and Frequency Complementation

Unlike activity verbs, stative verbs cannot be used with durational complements that quantify duration. For example, one cannot say in Chinese: *I liked him for a year.*

Unlike activity verbs and achievement verbs, stative verbs cannot be used with frequency complements that indicate the number of times a situation occurs.

Modification by Intensifiers

Intensifiers are words which express the degree of a state. They are compatible with all words whose meanings can be qualified in terms of degree.* Almost all stative verbs can be modified by intensifiers. The small number of exceptions which cannot be modified by intensifiers include the linking verbs 是 shì and 像 xiāng, the words of possibility and ability, 能 néng and 可以 kěyǐ, and the obligation words 應該/yīnggāi, 該/gāi, and 應當/yīngdāng. Note that the word 會/huì can be modified by intensifiers.

*Linguists sometimes refer to words which can be qualified in terms of degree as 'scalar predicates.'

Intensifiers

太	tài	too
最	zuì	the most
非常	fēicháng	extremely (colloquial)
極其/极其	jíqí	extremely (formal)
特別	tèbié	especially
尤其	yóuqí	especially
真	zhēn	really
很	hěn	very
挺	tǐng	very, rather
更	gèng	even more
比較/比較	bǐjiào	relatively (colloquial)
相當/相當	xiāngdāng	rather (formal)
(有)一點高/(有)一點	(yǒu) yídiǎn	a little

Intensifier + Stative Verb

太高	tài gāo	very tall/too tall
最高	zuì gāo	the tallest
非常高	fēicháng gāo	extremely tall
極其高/及其高	jíqí gāo	extremely tall (literary)
特別高	tèbié gāo	especially tall
尤其高	yóuqí gāo	especially tall
真高	zhēn gāo	really tall
很高	hěn gāo	very tall
挺高	tǐng gāo	very tall
更高	gèng gāo	even taller
比較高/比較高	bǐjiào gāo	relatively tall
相當高/相當高	xiāngdāng gāo	rather tall
(有)一點高/(有)一點高	(yǒu) yídiǎn gāo	a little tall

A Note on Stative Verbs, Syllable Length, and Intensifiers

If the stative verb is one syllable in length, it must be preceded by a modifier. In negated sentences, the modifier is 不 bù. In affirmative sentences, the default modifier is the intensifier 很 hěn. Without 很 hěn, the sentence is grammatical but not natural sounding.

你的弟弟很高。

? 你的弟弟高。

nǐ de dìdì hěn gāo.

nǐ de dìdì gāo.

Your younger brother is (very) tall.

Your younger brother is tall.

你的弟弟不高。

nǐ de dìdì bù gāo.

Your younger brother is not tall.

Modification Involving Progressive Change

The following structures involving the word 越 yuè indicate a change in a situation over time.

■ 越來越/越來越 SV yuè lái yuè SV more and more SV

■ 越 V₁ 越 SV yuè V₁ yuè SV the more V₁, the more SV

All stative verbs which can be modified by intensifiers may occur in these patterns in the position indicated. Only stative verbs are acceptable. Activity verbs and achievement verbs cannot be used in these structures.

越來越/越來越 SV yuè lái yuè SV more and more SV

弟弟越來越高。

dìdi yuè lái yuè gāo.

Younger brother is taller and taller. (more and more tall)

弟弟越來越貴。

dìdi kuàngquán shuǐ yuè lái yuè guì.

Spring water is more and more expensive.

她越來越喜歡那個男的。

She likes that guy more and more.

她越來越喜歡那個男的。

She likes that guy more and more.

漢字，越寫越好看。

Hàn zì, yuè xiě yuè hǎokān.

Chinese characters, the more you write (them), the nicer looking they get.

越 V₁ 越 SVyuè V₁ yuè SV*the more V₁ the more SV*

In this pattern, the first verb (V₁) can be either a stative verb or an activity verb, but the second verb (labeled as SV) must be stative.

弟弟越跑越快。

didi yuè pǎo yuè kuài.

The more younger brother runs, the faster he gets.

越快越好。

yuè kuài yuè hǎo.

I like the better.

中國飯，我越吃越喜歡。

中国饭，我越吃越喜欢。

Zhōngguó fàn, wǒ yuè chī yuè xǐhuān.

Chinese food, the more I eat it, the more I like it.

1. Describe 張明 Zhāng Míng in complete sentences using the following stative verbs.

張明 Zhāng Míng is:

1. 高 gāo tall

6. 矮 ǎi short

7. 瘦 shòu thin

8. 笨 bèn stupid

9. 懒 lǎn lazy

10. 可靠 kěkào reliable

2. The main verb in each of the following sentences is a stative verb. Rewrite each sentence in the negative form.

1. 她是學生。

她 is student.

tā shì xuésheng.

She is a student.

2. 我喜欢做饭。

我 like cook.

wǒ xǐhuān zuò fàn.

I like to cook.

越 V₁ 越 SV

gōngqìng qìchē piào hěn guì.

Bus tickets are very expensive.

3. 公共汽車票很貴。
公共汽车票很贵。

gōnggòng qìchē piào hěn guì.
Bus tickets are very expensive.

弟弟越跑越快。

wǒ yào mǎi nà běn shū.

*I want to buy that book.*我要買那本書。

nà ge rén hěn hǎo kàn.

*That person is very good looking.*那个人很好看。

wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ shuō huà.

*I want to speak with you.*我想跟你说話。

nà zhè shì yì gè hěn dà de wèntí.

*This is a big problem.*这是一个很大的問題。

nǐ zài zhèr kěyǐ chōu yān.

*You can smoke here.*你想在这兒可以抽煙。

wǒ huì shuō Rìyǔ.

*I can speak Japanese.*我会说日语。

nà zhāng huà hěn piàoliang.

*That picture is very pretty.*那張畫兒很漂亮。

3. The main verb in each of the following sentences is 有 yǒu. Rewrite each sentence in the negative form.

1. 他有一個弟弟。
他有一个弟弟。

tā yǒu yí gè dìdi.
He has a younger brother.

2. 桌子上有書。
桌子上有书。
zhuōzi shàng yǒu shū.
There are books on the table.

3. 他們有問題。
他们有问题。
tāmen yǒu wèntí.
They have a problem/question.

4. 屋子裏有人。
屋子里面有。
wūzi lǐ yǒu rén.
There are people in the room.

5. 他很有錢。
他很有钱。
tā hěn yǒu qián.
He has a lot of money. (negative: He doesn't have money.)

4. Select the right intensifier from the list above to complete each sentence according to its English translation.

1. 我有一隻狗。這隻狗____好。
我有一只狗。这只狗____好。
wǒ yǒu yí zhī gǒu. zhè zhī gǒu____hǎo.
I have a dog. This dog is very good.

2. 他____喜歡我。
他____喜欢我。
tā ____ xǐhuan wǒ.
He likes me a lot.

3. 我也____喜歡他。
我也____喜欢他。
wǒ yě ____ xǐhuan tā.
I also like him extremely much.

4. 他____喜歡在公園裏跑。
他____喜欢在公园里跑。
tā ____ xǐhuan zài gōngyuán lǐ pǎo.
He likes best to run in the park.

5. 他跑得____快。
他跑得____快。
tā pǎode ____ kuài.
He runs extremely fast. (use a colloquial intensifier)

6. 他____喜歡吃牛肉。
他____喜欢吃牛肉。
tā ____ xǐhuan chī niúròu.
He especially likes to eat beef.

7. 我想他吃得____多。他____胖。
我想他吃得____多。他____胖。
wǒ xiǎng tā chīde ____ duō. tā ____ pàng.
I think he eats too much. He is a little fat.

8. 說實在，養一隻狗____麻煩。
说实在，养一只狗____麻烦。
shuō shízài, yǎng yí zhī gǒu____máfan.
Truthfully speaking, raising a dog is relatively bothersome/time-consuming.

9. 並且，要花____多錢。
并且，要花____多钱。
bìngqíe, yào huā ____ duō qián.
Also, you have to spend a lot of money.

10. 可是____有意思。
可是____有意思。
kěshì ____ yǒu yìsī.
But it is really interesting.

5. Write Mandarin sentences using the 越來越/越來越 yuè lái yuè + Stative Verb pattern with each of the following pairs of phrases.

1. 他的朋友 ... 多
tā de péngyou ... duō
His friends ... more

2. 他的問題 ... 少
他的问题 ... 少
wèntí... shǎo
His problems ... fewer

3. 你的故事 ... 複雜
你的故事 ... 复杂
nǐ de gùshì ... fùzá
your story ... complex

4. 書 ... 貴
书 ... 贵
shū ... guì
books ... expensive

5. 汽車 ... 快
汽车 ... 快
qìchē ... kuài
cars ... fast

6. Use the pattern 越 V 越 SV 越 V 越 SV with each of the following pairs of phrases to write Mandarin sentences that match the English meanings.

1. *The more you do it the better it gets.*

做 ... 好 zuò ... hǎo do ... well/good

2. *The more you read the faster you get.*

念 ... 快 niàn ... kuài read ... fast

3. *The more you sleep the more tired you get.*

睡 ... 累 shuì ... lèi sleep ... tired

4. *The more you eat the fatter you get.*

吃 ... 胖 chī ... pàng eat ... fat

5. *The more you practise the more accurate you get.*

練習 / 练习 ... 準/准 liànxí ... zhǔn practice ... accurate

6.

7. Translate these sentences into English.

1. 他跑得越來越快。

他跑得越来越快。

tā pǎo dé yuè lái yuè kuài.

2. 我越來越累。(累 lèi tired)

我越来越累。

wǒ yuè lái yuè lèi.

3. 你越來越年輕!(年輕/年轻 niánqīng young)

你越来越年轻!

nǐ yuè lái yuè niánqīng!

4. 他的發音越來越標準。(發音/发音 fāyīn pronunciation, 他的發音越來越標準。標準/标准 biāozhǔn accurate)
tā de fāyīn yuè lái yuè biāozhǔn.

5. 他長得越來越高。(長/长 高 zhǎng gāo grow tall)
他长得越来越高。

tā zhǎng dé yuè lái yuè gāo.

6. 中國綠茶越來越貴。(綠茶/绿茶 lǜ chá green tea), 中國綠茶越來越貴。

Zhōngguó lǜ chá yuè lái yuè guì.

7. 數學越來越難。(數學/数学 shùxué math, 數學越來越難。難/难 nán difficult)

shùxué yuè lái yuè nán.

8. 這件事情越來越複雜。(事情 shìqíng situation, 這件事情越來越复杂。複雜/复杂 fùzá complicated)

zhè jiàn shìqíng yuè lái yuè fùzá.

9. 她的朋友越來越多。

她的朋友越来越多。

tā de péngyou yuè lái yuè duō.

10. 這種音樂越來越流行。(音樂/音乐 yīnyuè music, 這種音樂越來越流行。流行 liúxíng popular)

zhè zhǒng yīnyuè yuè lái yuè liúxíng.

Modification of Adjectival Stative Verbs

In addition to modification by preceding intensifiers, adjectival stative verbs can also be modified in the following ways.

Modification by Intensifier Suffixes

A small number of intensifiers are verb suffixes. They include 樣了/jié

extremely, 得不得了/de bùdéliǎo *extremely*, and 得很 de hěn *very*. These intensifier suffixes can only modify adjectival stative verbs.

Intensifier Suffix	Stative Verb +Intensifier	Example Sentence
極了 / 极了	好極了 / 好极了	美國大學學費 <u>貴極了</u> 。
jíle	hǎojíle	美國大學學費 <u>贵极了</u> 。
extremely	extremely good	Méigǔo dàxué xuēfèi guìjíle. The tuition at American universities is extremely expensive.
得很	好得很	美國大學學費 <u>貴得很</u> 。
déhěn	hǎodehěn	Méigǔo dàxué xuēfèi guìdéhěn. The tuition at American universities is very expensive.
very	very good	Méigǔo dàxué xuēfèi guìde hěn. The tuition at American universities is extremely expensive.

她高興得說不出話來。
她高兴得说不出话来。
tā gāoxìng de shuō bu chū huà lái.
She is so happy that she can't speak.

Modification by Repetition

Some one-syllable adjectival stative verbs can serve as noun modifiers when they are repeated. The meaning of this structure is equivalent to *very+stative verb+noun*.

高高的那個人	很高的那個人
高高的那个人	很高的那个人
gāo gāo de nà ge rén that very tall person	hěn gāo de nà ge rén that very tall person

那個瘦瘦的孩子	那個很瘦的孩子
那个瘦瘦的孩子	那个很瘦的孩子
nà ge shòu shòu de háizi that very thin child	nà ge hěn shòu de háizi that very thin child

Modification by Extent Phrases: So Adjectival Stative Verb that ...

Extent phrases introduce the consequence of an adjectival stative verb. They are formed as follows:

Adj. Stative Verb 得 de VP/Clause

那種車賣得沒有人買。	我吓得说不出話來。
那种车卖得没有人买。	tā gāoxìng de shuō bu chū huà lái. <i>She is so happy that she can't speak.</i>
nà zhǒng chē guì de méi yǒu rén mǎi. <i>That kind of car is so expensive that no one buys it.</i>	tā lǎn de _____.

8. 他嚇得 _____ 。 (嚇/吓 xià,frightened)

1. 今天熱得 _____ 。 (熱/热 rè hot)

2. 他窮得 _____ 。 (窮 qióng poor)

3. 我累得 _____ 。 (累 lèi tired)

4. 我忙得 _____ 。 (忙 máng busy)

5. 法國酒貴得 _____ 。 (貴/guì expensive)

Fǎguó jiǔ guì de _____ .

6. 他的腳大得 _____ 。 (腳/jiǎo foot/feet)

tā de jiǎo dà de _____ .

7. 這次考試長得 _____ 。 (長/cháng long)

zhè cì kǎoshì cháng de _____ .

8. 他懶得 _____ 。 (懶/lǎn lazy)

wǒ xià de _____ .

9. 他懶得 _____ 。 (懶/lǎn lazy)

tā lǎn de _____ .

10. 他累得站着睡覺。他累得站着睡觉。

tā lèi de zhànzhe shuì jiào.
He is so tired that he is sleeping standing up.

8. Select the best extent phrase from the list below to complete each sentence and translate each sentence into English.

1. 今天熱得 _____ 。 (熱/热 rè hot)

jīntiān rè de _____ .

2. 他窮得 _____ 。 (窮 qióng poor)

tā qióng de _____ .

3. 我累得 _____ 。 (累 lèi tired)

wǒ lèi de _____ .

4. 我忙得 _____ 。 (忙 máng busy)

wǒ máng de _____ .

5. 法國酒貴得 _____ 。 (貴/guì expensive)

Fǎguó jiǔ guì de _____ .

6. 他的腳大得 _____ 。 (腳/jiǎo foot/feet)

tā de jiǎo dà de _____ .

7. 這次考試長得 _____ 。 (長/cháng long)

zhè cì kǎoshì cháng de _____ .

10. 她好得 _____。

tā hǎo de _____.

Extent Phrases

a. 连大衣都没有。

lian dàiyì dōu méiyǒu.

he doesn't even have an overcoat.

b. 人人都喜欢她。

rén rén dōu xǐhuān tā.

everyone likes her.

c. 穿不上鞋子。

chuānbushàng xiézi.

can't put on shoes.

d. 睡不着了。

shuìbuzháo le.

couldn't sleep.

e. 我们都写不完。

wǒmen dōu xiěbuwán.

we all couldn't finish.

f. 做不了功课。

wǒmen dōu xiěbuwán.

we all couldn't finish.

unable to do school work

g. 谁也买不起。

shéi yě mǎibùqǐ.

no one can afford to buy it.

h. 就哭起来了。

jìu kūqlí le.

began to cry.

i. 连饭都不做。

lian fàn dōu bù zuò.

doesn't even cook.

j. 忘了吃饭。

wàng le chī fàn.

forgot to eat.

Properties of 是 shì, 带 xìng and 有 yǒu

是 shì to be NP₁ 是 shì NP₂

The verb 是 shì joins two NPs and expresses a relationship of identity between the NPs.

我是学生。

我 是 学 生。

wǒ shì xuéshēng.
I am a student.

我的朋友是日本人。

wǒ de péngyou shì Rìběn rén.
My friend is Japanese.

今天是七月四號。

今天 是 七 月 四 号。

jīntiān shì qīyuè sì hào.
Today is July 4th.

In affirmative sentences, when NP₂ refers to time, money, or age, 是 shì may be omitted.

今天(是)七月四號。

今天(是)七月四号。

jīntiān (shì) qīyuè sì hào.
Today is July 4th.

那本書(是)二十塊錢。

那本书(是)二十块钱。

nèi běn shū (shì) èrshí kuài qián.
That book is \$20.

妹妹(是)幾歲？

妹妹(是)几岁？

mèimei (shì) jǐ suì?

How old is younger sister?

是 shì may never be omitted in negated sentences. The negation of 是 shì is

always 不是 bú shì.

今天不是七月四號。

今天不是七月四号。

jūntiān bù shì qīyuè sìhào.

Today is not July 4th.

那本書不是二十塊錢。

那本书不是二十块钱。

nèi běn shù bù shì èrshí kuàiqian.

That book is not \$20.

妹妹不是六歲。

妹妹不是六岁。

mèimei bù shì liù suì.

Younger sister is not 6 years old.

姓 xìng to be surnamed

姓 xìng introduces a surname (family name).

The polite way to inquire about a surname is as follows:

Q: 您貴姓？

您贵姓？

nín guì xìng?

What is your family name?

The neutral way to inquire about a surname is as follows:

Q: 你姓什麼？

你姓什么？

nǐ xìng shéme?

What is your family name?

Notice that the reply is the same for both forms of the question.* 姓 xìng is always followed by the family name alone. When including a family name plus a given name or title, the word 是 shì is used.

她姓高。她是高老師。

她姓高。她是高老师。

tā xìng Gāo. tā shì Gāo lǎoshī.

Her family name is Gao. She is teacher Gao.

她姓王。他是王美玲。

tā xìng Wáng. tā shì Wáng Měilíng.

Her family name is Wang. She is Wang Meiling.

有 yǒu to have, to exist

有 yǒu has two distinct meanings:

▪ Possessive 有 yǒu to have

我有一本中英字典。

wǒ yǒu yì běn Zhōng-Yīng zìdiǎn.

I have a Chinese-English dictionary.

▪ Existential 有 yǒu to exist

桌子上有一本中英字典。

zhuōzi shàng yǒu yì běn Zhōng-Yīng zìdiǎn.

On the table there is a Chinese-English dictionary.

Existential 有 yǒu does not take a subject.

Existential 有 yǒu typically occurs in expressions referring to location. (See

Chapter 9: Location, Directional Movement, and Distance.)

9. Fill in the blanks with 是 shì, 姓 xìng, or 有 yǒu.

1. 我的中文老師 — 黃。

我的中文老师 — 黄。

wǒ de Zhōngwén lǎoshī — Huáng.

My Chinese teacher's family name is Huang.

* A rarely used, self-deprecating reply to the polite question is as follows. (敝 bì means *lowly/miserable*.)

敝姓高。

My lowly surname is Gao.

2. 她的先生 —— 陳。 她的先生 —— 陈。
tā de xiānsheng —— Chén.
Her husband's family name is Chen.
3. 他們 —— 兩個孩子，一個兒子一個女兒。
他們 —— 两个孩子，一个儿子一个女儿。
tāmen —— liǎng ge háizi, yī ge érzi yī ge nǚér.
They have two children, a son and a daughter.
4. 他們的兒子 —— 大學生。
他们的儿子 —— 大学生。
tāmen de érzi —— dàxuéshēng.
Their son is a college student.
5. 他 —— 二十歲。
他 —— 二十岁。
tā —— èrshí suì.
He is 20 years old.
6. 那個大學 —— 一萬多學生。
那个大学 —— 一万多学生。
nà ge dàxué —— yíwàn duō xuéshēng.
That college has more than 10,000 students.
7. 黃老師的女兒不 —— 學生了。
黃老师的女儿不 —— 学生了。
Huáng lǎoshī de nǚér bù —— xuéshēng le.
Teacher Huang's daughter is not a student anymore.
8. 她 —— 工程師。
她 —— 工程师。
tā —— gōngchéngshī.
She is an engineer.

Properties of Stative Verbs of Ability, Possibility, and Permission

會/会 huì, 能 néng, and 可以 kěyǐ are equivalent in meaning to modal auxiliary verbs in English. The meanings they convey are as follows.

會/会	future, probability, ability or skill: 'will,' 'can'
能 néng	physical ability, capability: 'can'
可以 kěyǐ	permission: 'may,' 'can'

2. The English equivalents of these words are not inflected and are therefore not full verbs. As we have seen, in Mandarin, these words have the properties of full verbs. In Mandarin, they are typically followed directly by another verb, though they may occur without a following verb in response to a question or in other contexts in which the following verb is implied.

- Q: 你會說英文嗎？
你会说英文吗？
nǐ huì shuō Yingwén ma?
Can you speak English?
- Q: 在這兒可以不可以抽煙？
在这儿可以不可以抽烟？
zài zhèr kěyǐ bù kěyǐ chōu yān?
Is it okay to smoke here?

When used in the V-NEG-V structure, 會/会 huì and 不會/不会 bú huì may be split up. 會/会 huì occurs as the first verb of the VP, before any prepositional phrase or location phrase. 不會/不会 bú huì occurs at the end of the VP, after the object. (See Chapter 8: Questions and Question Words.)

- Q: 你會說英文不會？
你会说英文不会？
nǐ huì shuō Yingwén bú huì?
Can you speak English?

10. Select 會/会 huì, 能 néng, or 可以 kěyǐ to complete each sentence. Some sentences may have two correct choices.

1. Q: 我的車壞了。你 —— 不 —— 幫我修？
我的车坏了。你 —— 不 —— 帮我修？
wǒ de chē huài le. nǐ —— bu —— bāng wǒ xiū?
My car is broken. Can you help me fix it?
2. A: 對不起。我不 —— 。
对不起。我不 —— 。
duìbuqǐ. wǒ bù ——
Sorry. I can't —— .

3. Q: 你 —— 不 —— 寫這個字？

你 —— 不 —— 写这个字？

nǐ —— bù —— xiě zhè ge zì?

Can you write this character?

4. A: _____。

_____。

I can.

5. 媽，我今天晚上 —— 不 —— 去看電影？

媽，我今天晚上 —— 不 —— 去看电影？

mā, wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng —— bù —— qù kàn dànyǐng?

Mom, can I go see a movie tonight?

6. 你 —— 不 —— 騎自行車？

你 —— 不 —— 騑自行车？

nǐ —— bù —— qí zìxíngchē?

Can you ride a bicycle?

7. 那個小孩子 —— 說話了嗎？

那个小孩子 —— 说话了吗？

nà ge xiǎo háizi —— shuō huà le ma?

Can that child speak yet?

8. 高中生 —— 不 —— 開車？

高中生 —— 不 —— 开车？

gāozhōngshēng —— bù —— kāi chē?

Can high school students drive?

9. 你 —— 不 —— 把這張桌子搬進去？

你 —— 不 —— 把这张桌子搬进去？

nǐ —— bù —— bǎ zhè zhǎng zhuōzǐ ban jìn qù?

Can you move this table in?

10. 你 —— 不 —— 跟我們一起去旅遊？

你 —— 不 —— 跟我们一起去旅游？

nǐ —— bù —— gēn wǒmen yíqǐ qù lǚyóu?

Can you go traveling with us?

11. Complete these sentences to match the English translations, adding the parenthesized expressions in the correct location.
- 你在圖書館借那本書。(能)
你在图书馆借那本书。(能)
nǐ zài túshūguǎn jiè nà běn shù. (néng)
You can borrow that book at the library.
 - 你當然借我的車。(可以)
你当然借我的车。(可以)
nǐ dāngrán jiè wǒ de chē. (kéyǐ)
Of course you can borrow my car.
 - 開車的時候用手機嗎？(可以)
开车的时候用手机吗？(可以)
kāi chē de shíhou yòng shǒujī ma? (kéyǐ)
When you drive a car can you use a cell phone?
 - 我跟你談話？(可以不可以)
我跟你谈话？(可以不可以)
wǒ gēn nǐ tánhuà? (kéyǐ/bù kěyǐ)
Can I speak with you?
 - 美國人都開車嗎？(會)
美国人都开车吗？(会)
Méiguó rén dōu kāi chē ma? (huì)
Can all Americans drive?
 - 我今天晚上跟你念書？(能不能)
我今天晚上跟你念书？(能不能)
wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng gēn nǐ niàn shù? (néng/bù néng)
Can I study with you tonight?
 - 這個門，你開得開嗎？(能)
这个门，你开得开吗？(能)
zhè ge mén, nǐ kāidékāi ma? (néng)
Can you open this door?
 - 我只做早飯。(會)
我只做早饭。(会)
wǒ zhǐ zuò zǎofàn. (huì)
I can only cook breakfast.

9. 猫都抓老鼠。(會)
猫都抓老鼠。(会)
māo dōu zhuā lǎoshǔ. (huì)
All cats can catch mice.
10. 你說外語？(會不會)
你說外语？(会不会)
nǐ shuō wàiyǔ? (huì bù huì)
Can you speak a foreign language?

Properties of Words of Obligation

應該/应该 yīnggāi, 該/该 gāi, and 應/當 yīngdāng are three of the words used to express obligation in Mandarin. They are included in this chapter because they have the properties of stative verbs, including the ability to occur in Verb-NEG-Verb questions. The other words of obligation are adverbs. They are presented in more detail in Chapter 4: Adverbs.

ACTIVITY VERBS

Activity verbs refer to actions that have duration. Examples include:

看	kàn	<i>to read/to look</i>
寫/写	xiě	<i>to write</i>
說/说	shuō	<i>to talk</i>
聽/听	tíng	<i>to listen</i>
買/买	mǎi	<i>to shop</i>
睡	shuì	<i>to sleep</i>
念	nian	<i>to study</i>

Properties of Activity Verbs

Negation

Activity verbs may be negated with 不 bù or 沒 méi. 不 bù is used for non-past or general time. 沒 méi is used to indicate that the action did not happen in the past. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guо.)

- 我不吃早饭。
我不吃早饭。
wǒ bù chī zǎofàn.
I don't eat breakfast.

- 我今天早上沒吃早飯。
我今天早上沒吃早饭。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng méi chī zǎofàn.
Today I didn't eat breakfast.

Aspectual Suffixes

Activity verbs can be suffixed by the aspect markers 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guо. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guо.)

- Perfective aspect marker V-了 le.

- 我已經吃了早飯。
我已经吃了早饭。
wǒ yǐjīng chīle zǎofàn.
I've already eaten breakfast.

- Durational suffix V-着 zhe.

- 他正吃着饭呢。
tā zhèng chīzhě fàn ne.
He's eating.

- Experiential aspect marker 過/guо.

- 我吃過中國飯。
我吃过中国饭。
wǒ chīguò Zhōngguó fàn.
I have eaten Chinese food before.

Duration

Activity verbs describe actions which have duration. As noted above, they can be suffixed by the durational suffix V-着 zhe. The suffix highlights the ongoing activity.

- 爸爸喝着咖啡看報紙。
爸爸喝着咖啡看报纸。
bàba hézhe kāfēi kàn bàozhǐ.
Dad drinks coffee while reading the newspaper.

Activity verbs can also be used with other expressions which indicate duration. These include the following:

- 正 zhèng + VP, 正在 zhèngzài + VP. These phrases immediately precede the verb and often occur with the durational suffix V-着 zhe.

- (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guо.)

他正在洗澡。一會兒給你回電話。

他正在洗澡。一会儿给你回电话。

tā zhèngzài xǐ zǎo. yíhuìr gěi nǐ huí diànhuà.

He's taking a shower right now. He'll call you back soon.

(*He's right in the middle of a shower.*)

- Durational complements. These expressions follow the verb. When the verb is not followed by an object, the durational complement immediately follows the verb:

Verb + Duration

他睡了一個鐘頭。

他睡了一个钟头。

tā shuì le yí ge zhōngtou.

He slept for an hour.

When the verb is followed by an object and a durational complement, the sentence may take either of the following forms:

Verb + Duration 爾 de Object or Verb + Object Verb + Duration

他睡了一個鐘頭的覺。

他睡了一个钟头的觉。

tā shuì le yí ge zhōngtou de jiào.

He slept for an hour.

Frequency

Activity verbs may be suffixed with frequency complements.

When the verb is not followed by an object, the frequency complement simply follows the verb:

Verb + Frequency

那部電影，我已經看了兩次。

那部电影，我已经看了两次。

nà bù diànyǐng, wǒ yǐjǐng kàn le liǎng cì.

That movie, I've already seen it two times.

When the verb is followed by an object and a frequency complement, the structure is as follows:

Verb + Object	Verb + Frequency	Verb + Object Verb + Frequency
寫 / 写 xiě	兩次 liǎng cì	寫書 / 写书 xiě shù
寫字 / 写字 xiě zì	兩次 liǎng cì	寫字 / 写字 xiě zì
說話 / 說话 shuō huà	兩次 liǎng cì	說話 / 说话 shuō huà
吃 / 吃 chī	兩次 liǎng cì	吃飯 / 吃饭 chī fàn
睡 / 睡 shuì	兩次 liǎng cì	睡覺 / 睡觉 shuì jiào
Verb + Default Object:		
我們 吃 飯 吧 !		
我们 吃 饭 吧 !		
wǒmen chī fàn ba!		
Verb + Question Word:		
你要 吃 什 麼 ?		
你要 吃 什 么 ?		
nǐ yào chī shénme?		
Verb + Content Object		
我們 吃 饅 子 吧 。		
我们 吃 饺 子 吧 。		
wǒmen chī jiǎozǐ ba.		
<i>Let's eat dumplings.</i>		

Resultative Endings

Activity verbs refer to open-ended actions. Resultative verb endings can be added to activity verbs to indicate the ending or result of the action. Only activity verbs can be suffixed with resultative verb endings.

看見 kànjiàn *to perceive*

寫錯/寫錯 xiècuò *to write incorrectly*

說好/說好 shuōhǎo *to come to an agreement*

聽懂/听懂 tīngdǒng *to understand (by listening)*

買到/买到 mǎidào *to buy*

念完 niànwán *to finish studying*

For more on resultative endings, including exercises involving the resultative structure, see Chapter 7: The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes.

12. Rewrite these sentences to include the frequency or duration expression.

1. 我聽了音樂。(一個小時)

我听了音乐。(一个小时)

wǒ tīng le yīnyuè. (yī ge xiǎoshí)

I listened to music for an hour.

2. 我每天看電視。(一個半鐘頭)

我每天看电视。(一个半钟头)

wǒ měitiān kàn diànshì. (yī ge bàn zhōngtóu)

I watch television every day for an hour and a half.

3. 我去年坐了飛機。(三次)

我去年坐了飞机。(三次)

wǒ qùnián zuò le fēijī. (sān cì)

I rode a plane three times last year.

4. 我去過法國。(四次)

我去过法国。(四次)

wǒ qùguó Fǎguó. (sì cì)

I went to France four times.

5. 我每天晚上學中文。(三個小時)

我每天晚上学中文。(三个小时)

wǒ méitiān wǎnshàng xué Zhōngwén. (sān ge xiǎoshí)

I study Chinese every night for three hours.

6. 我看了那個電影。(兩次)

我看了那个电影。(两次)

wǒ kàn le nà ge diànyǐng. (liǎng cì)

I saw that movie twice.

7. 我睡覺了。(七個鐘頭)

我睡覺了。(七个钟头)

wǒ shuì jiào le. (qī ge zhōngtóu)

I slept for seven hours.

8. 我吃過中國飯。(幾次)

我吃过中国饭。(几次)

wǒ chīguo Zhōngguó fàn. (jǐ cì)

I ate Chinese food a few times.

9. 我用過筷子。(一次)

我用过筷子。(一次)

wǒ yòngguo kuàizi. (yī cì)

I've used chopsticks once.

10. 我每天寫中國字。(一個小時)

我每天写中国字。(一个小时)

wǒ měitiān xiě Zhōngguó zì. (yī ge xiǎoshí)

I write Chinese characters for an hour every day.

Modification by Manner Adverbials

Activity verbs can be modified by phrases which indicate *the manner in which an activity is performed*. Mandarin uses two patterns to express modification in terms of manner.

Pattern 1: The manner phrase occurs after the verb. This pattern is used to describe the way that the verb is performed by the subject.

The marker for this kind of adverbial modification is 得 de.

Verb 得 de Stative Verb

吃得慢 chī de mǎn eat slowly

我妹妹吃得慢。
wǒ mèimei chī de hěn mǎn.
My little sister eats slowly.

寫/寫得好
xiěde hǎo
write well
你中國字寫得很好。
nǐ Zhōngguó zì xiěde hěn hǎo.
You write Chinese characters well.

Note: Negation precedes the stative verb:

說得不準
shuō de bù zhǔn
speaks inaccurately
他的四聲說得不準。
tā de sīshēng shuō de bù zhǔn.
He speaks his tones inaccurately.

If the verb is followed by an object and a manner adverbial, verb + object must be stated before verb 得 de stative verb.

Verb + Object Verb 得 de Stative Verb

她寫中文寫得很慢。
tā xiě Zhōngwén zì xiě de hěn màn.
She writes Chinese characters well.

她寫中文字寫得很好。
tā xiě zhōngwén zì xiěde hǎo.
She writes Chinese characters well.

她說日文說得很標準。
tā shuō Rìwén shuo de hěn biāozhǔn.
She speaks Japanese accurately.

她說日文說得很標準。
tā shuō Rìwén shuo de hěn biāozhǔn.
She speaks Japanese accurately.

她吃飯吃得很慢。
tā chī fàn chī de hěn màn.
She eats slowly.

她吃飯吃得很慢。
tā chī fàn chī de hěn màn.
She eats slowly.

Note: When an activity verb is modified by a stative verb in this way, the VP behaves like a stative verb phrase. The verb cannot be suffixed by the aspect markers 將 JIāng or 過 Guò.

着 zhe is also not acceptable.

◎她說了日文說得很標準。
tā shuō le Rìwén shuo de hěn biāozhǔn.

◎她寫過中文字寫得很好。
她寫過中文字寫得很好。
tā xiěguo Zhōngwén zì xiě de hěn hǎo.

Pattern 2: The manner phrase occurs before the VP. This pattern describes the way that

the entire VP is performed by the subject.

The marker for this kind of adverbial modification is 地 de.

Stative Verb 地 de VP

他慢慢地把門開開了。
tā mǎmǎn de bā mén kāi kāi le.
He slowly opened the door.

你得好好兒地準備功課。
nǐ děi hǎohāor de zhǔnbèi gōngkè.
You'd better prepare your lessons well.

Negation precedes the adverbial modifier.

他沒有好好兒地做。
tā méiyǒu hǎohāor de zuò.
He didn't do the job well.

13. Complete these sentences with the appropriate Mandarin words to match the English translation. Use the 'Verb + Object Verb 得 de Stative Verb' pattern.

- 妹妹寫英文 _____ 。(慢)
妹妹写英文 _____ 。(慢)
mèimei xiě Yīngwén _____ . (màn)
- 中學生吃飯 _____ 。(多)
中学生吃饭 _____ 。(多)
zhōngxuéshēng chī fàn _____ . (duō)
- 姐姐說話 _____ 。(快)
姐姐说话 _____ 。(快)
jiějie shuō huà _____ . (kuài)

- Older sister speaks quickly.

4. 弟弟吃飯 _____ °(慢)
 弟弟吃饭 _____ °(慢)

dìdì chī fàn _____ . (màn)

Little brother eats slowly.

2. 你得做。°(好好兒地)

你得做。°(好好兒地)

nǐ děi zuò. (hǎohǎor de)

You have to do it well.

5. 爸爸看書 _____ °(多)
 爸爸看书 _____ °(多)

bàba kàn shū _____ . (duō)

Dad reads a lot.

3. 走。°(慢慢)

zǒu. (màn màn)

Don't hurry off. (Go slowly)

6. 我寫字 _____ °(不好)

我写字 _____ °(不好)

wǒ xiě zì _____ . (bù hǎo)

I write Chinese characters poorly.

7. 媽媽開車 _____ °(好)

妈妈开车 _____ °(好)

māma kāi chē _____ . (hǎo)

Mom drives well.

8. 哥哥喝咖啡 _____ °(少)

哥哥喝咖啡 _____ . (shǎo)

Older brother drinks little coffee.

9. 姐姐寫字 _____ °(漂亮)

姐姐写字 _____ °(漂亮)

jíjie xiě zì _____ . (piào liang)

Older sister writes characters beautifully.

10. 弟弟看電視 _____ °(多)

弟弟看电视 _____ °(多)

dìdì kàn diàntv _____ . (duō)

Younger brother watches a lot of television.

4. 寫吧！°(快快)

xiě ba! (kuài kuài)

Hurry and write it.

5. 她把門開開了。°(慢慢地)

她把门开开了。°(慢慢地)

tā bǎ mén kāikai le. (màn mǎn de)

She slowly opened the door.

6. 她躺在床上看書。°(靜靜地)

她躺在床上看书。°(静静地)

tā tǎng zài chuángshàng kàn shū. (jìng jìng de)

She quietly lay on the bed reading.

7. 風從南方吹來。°(輕輕地)

风从南方吹来。°(轻轻地)

fēng cóng nánfāng chuí lái. (qīngqīng de)

The breeze blows softly from the south.

8. 他哭起來了。°(不知不覺地)

他哭起来了。°(不知不覺地)

tā kūqì le. (bù zhī bù jué de)

He unconsciously started to cry.

9. 他們跑回家了。°(高高興興地)

他们跑回家了。°(高高兴兴地)

tāmen pǎo huí jiā le. (gāogāo xìngxìng de)

They ran home happily.

10. 請你把事情再說一邊。°(慢慢兒地)

请你把事情再说一遍。°(慢慢儿地)

qǐng nǐ bǎ shìqíng zài shuō yībiān. (màn mǎr de)

Please explain the situation again slowly.

14. Put the adverbial phrase in the right place in each sentence to match the English translations.

1. 他把蛋糕吃完了。°(偷偷地)
 tā bǎ dāngāo chīwán le. (tōutou de)
He secretly ate the cake up.

2. 請你把事情再說一遍。°(慢慢兒地)
 qǐng nǐ bǎ shìqíng zài shuō yībiān. (màn mǎr de)
Please explain the situation again slowly.

ACHIEVEMENT VERBS

Achievement verbs are verbs whose actions are instantaneous and have no duration. The actions of many achievement verbs also result in a change of state. They include:

忘 死	wàng	<i>to forget</i>	tā zuōtiān máng de wàng le chī fàn. He died.
穿	sǐ	<i>to die</i>	
戴	chuān	<i>to put on (clothing) (on the torso or legs)</i>	
碰	dài	<i>to put on (clothing) (on the head or arms)</i>	
破	pèng	<i>to bump</i>	
跳	pò	<i>to break</i>	
賣/卖	tiào	<i>to jump</i>	
來/来	mài	<i>to sell</i>	
去	lái	<i>to come (to a location identified with the speaker)</i>	
站	qù	<i>to go (to a location distinct from the location of the speaker)</i>	
坐	zhàn	<i>to stand (a change from being seated to standing)</i>	
放	zuò	<i>to sit (a change from standing to seated)</i>	
開/开	fàng	<i>to place down (a change from up to down)</i>	
	kāi	<i>to open (a change from closed to open)</i>	

Properties of Achievement Verbs

Negation

Like activity verbs, achievement verbs may be negated with 不 bù or 沒 méi. 不 bù is used for non-past or general time. 沒 méi is used to indicate that the action did not happen in the past. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過 guo.)

他不賣自行車。他賣汽車。	tā bù mài zhíxíngchē. tā mài qìchē. He doesn't sell bicycles. He sells cars.
他沒騎過自行車。	tā méi qíguò zhíxíngchē. He's never ridden a bicycle before.
他沒騎過汽車。	
他沒騎過自行車。	
他沒騎過汽車。	

Aspectual Suffixes

Achievement verbs may be marked as completed or terminated with the perfective suffix V-了 le.

他昨天忙得忘了吃飯。

他昨天忙得忘了吃飯。

tā zuōtiān máng de wàng le chī fàn.
Yesterday he was so busy that he forgot to eat.

他死了。

tā sǐ le.
He died.

她賣了她的車。

她賣了她的車。

tā mài le tā de chē.
She sold her car.

Some achievement verbs describe repeatable actions. Those which do may be suffixed with the experiential suffix V-過/guo.

Repeatable Event

我去過中國。

I've gone to China.

Non-Repeatable Event

我忘過你的名字。

I forgot your name.

wǒ wàngguò nǐ de míngzì.
(intended: I forgot your name before)

Duration

Since achievement verbs do not have duration, they cannot be suffixed with the durational suffix V-着 zhe and they cannot occur with durational complements or with any expressions which mark duration.

Frequency

Achievement verbs may be suffixed with frequency complements. The complement immediately follows the verb.

我坐了一次飛機。

I rode on a plane once before.

我坐了一次飛機。

I rode on a plane once before.

他沒騎過自行車。

他沒騎過自行車。

Properties of the Achievement Verbs **给/gěi** and **送/sòng**

The achievement verbs **给/gěi** and **送/sòng** are distinguished from most verbs in Mandarin because they can take both a direct object and an indirect object. Most Mandarin verbs take no object or a single, direct object. **给/gěi** and **送/sòng** can also occur with a direct object and no indirect object.

Direct Object and Indirect Object

你不必給我任何東西。
You don't have to give me anything.

我們應該送他什麼樣的禮物？
What kind of gift should we present to him?

在中國不必給小費。
You don't have to give a tip in China.

15. The main verb in each of the following sentences is an activity verb or an achievement verb. Rewrite each sentence in the negative form. When doing this exercise, consult Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了/le, 着/zhe, and 過/guo. Note that V-了/le does not occur in sentences negated with 沒/méi.

1. 我看了那個電影。
I saw that movie.

2. 他坐了公共汽車。
He traveled by bus.

3. 我們星期六上課。
We attend class on Saturday(s).

4. 我昨天上了中文課。
I attended Chinese class yesterday.

5. 她今天吃了冰淇淋。
She ate ice cream today.

6. 我今天戴了手錶。
I put on a watch today.

7. 他穿了大衣。

He wore an overcoat.

8. 他送了禮物。

He presented a gift.

9. 我今天吃了早飯。

I ate breakfast today.

10. 我們明天考中文。

We have a test in Chinese.

11. 我今天吃了早飯。
I ate breakfast today.

12. 我們明天考中文。
Tomorrow we have a test in Chinese.

MEMBERSHIP IN MORE THAN ONE VERB CATEGORY

Many verbs shift their verb categories based on the overall properties of the sentence in which they occur. When functioning as a member of a particular category, the verb has all of the properties of that category and also the meaning associated with verbs in that category. Notice how the meanings of the following verbs shift slightly depending upon the category to which they belong. Since many achievement verbs describe actions which have resulting states, shifts between the categories of state and achievement are particularly common.

Stative Verb	Achievement Verb	Activity Verb
坐 zuò	他們在屋子裏坐着。 They are sitting in the house.	請坐(下)。 Please sit (down).
	他們在屋子裏坐着。 They are sitting in the house.	請坐(下)。 Please sit (down).

開/开 kāi	門開着呢。mén kāizhe ne. The door is open.	他把門開開了。tā bǎ mén kāikai le. He opened the door.	他每天都開車。tā měitiān shàng chē. Every day he travels by bus more than one hour to get to work.
放 fàng	桌子上放着很多東西。zhuōzi shàng fangzhe hěn duō dōngxi. There are a lot of things placed (sitting) on the table.	她把她的皮包放在桌子上了。tā bǎ tā de píbāo fàng zài zhuōzi shàng le. She took her handbag and put it on the table.	他每天都開車。tā měitiān shàng chē. Every day he drives every day.
戴 dài	她戴着很貴的耳環。tā dài zài hěn guì de érhuan. She is wearing very expensive earrings.	他戴上了帽子。tā dài shàng màozi le. He put on a hat.	他每天開車。tā měitiān shàng chē. Every day he drives every day.
掛/挂 guà	牆上掛着他女朋友的照片。qiáng shàng guàzhé tā nǚ péngyou de zhāopiàn. His girlfriend's photo is hanging on the wall.	他把他女朋友的照片掛在牆上。tā bǎ tā nǚ péngyou de zhāopiàn guà zài qiáng shàng. He hung his girlfriend's photo on the wall.	他每天開車。tā měitiān shàng chē. Every day he drives every day.

穿 chuān	他穿着很厚的大衣。tā chuānzhe hěn hòu de dàyi. He is wearing a very thick overcoat.	昨天很冷。我穿了很厚的大衣。zuótian hěn lěng, wǒ chuān le hěn hou de dàyi. It was very cold yesterday. I put on a very thick overcoat.
站 zhàn	怎麼回事？外邊站着很多人。zěnme huí shì? wàibian zhànzhe hěn duō rén. What's going on? There are a lot of people standing outside.	老師快來了。站起來吧！lǎoshi kuài lái le. zhàngqilai ba! The teacher is almost here. Stand up!
有 yǒu	他很有錢。tā hěn yǒu qián. He has a lot of money.	他有一筆錢。tā yǒu le yī běi qián. He has acquired a sum of money.

CHAPTER 4

Adverbs

CHARACTERISTICS OF ADVERBS

Adverbs are words that modify the VP. In Mandarin, they have the following characteristics:

Position in the VP

Adverbs occur at the beginning of the VP, before the verb and any prepositional phrase.

我一定去。

wǒ yìdìng qù.
I am definitely going.

他們都會說法語。

他们都会说法语。

tāmen dōu huì shuō Fǎyǔ.

They can all speak French.

他常給女朋友打電話。

他常给女朋友打电话。

tā cháng gěi nǚ péngyou dǎ diànhuà.

He often phones his girlfriend.

Exclusion from V-NEG-V Structure

Adverbs do not participate in Verb-NEG-Verb question formation.

②你一定不一定去？

nǐ yìdìng bù yìdìng qù?
Are you definitely going?

②他常不常來？

tā cháng bù cháng lái?
Does he often come?

Co-occurrence with Other Adverbs

Adverbs may co-occur with adverbs from other meaning groups (presented below). Generally, adverbs which indicate uniqueness such as 就 jiù, 只 zhǐ, 才 cái, and 光 guāng occur closest to the verb.

他可能只會寫一兩個字。

他可能只会写一两个字。

tā kěnèng zhǐ huì xiě yī liǎng ge zì。

Perhaps he can only write one or two characters.

你們都必須更認真一些。

你们都必须更认真一些。

nǐmēn dōu bìxū gèng rènzhēn yǐxié.

You should all be more conscientious.

你得馬上回家。

你得马上回家。

nǐ děi mǎshàng huí jiā.

You should go home immediately.

Adverbs and Negation

Adverbs usually occur before negation.

我還不懂。

我还不懂。

wǒ hái bù dǒng.

I still don't understand

他今天也許不來。

他今天也许不来。

tā jīntiān yěxǐ bù lái.

Perhaps he won't come today. (He may not come today.)

A small number of adverbs may occur before or after negation. Those which can include 都 dōu and 一定 yìdìng.

我不一定去。

wǒ bù yìdìng qù.
I am not definitely going.

我们都不去。

wǒmēn bù dōu qù.
We are not all going.

我一定不去。
wǒ yīdìng bù qù.

I am definitely not going.

我們都不去。
wǒmen dōu bù qù.

We are all not going.

我們都喜歡看電影。
wǒmen dōu xǐhuān kàn diànyǐng.

We all like to see movies.

As these examples illustrate, the relative position of adverb and negation influences the meaning of the sentence. The changes in meaning will be discussed below in the section on 都 dōu.

COMMON ADVERBS CATEGORIZED BY MEANING

Universality

都 dōu *all/always (see below for special focus)*

總 (是) zǒng(shì) *always*

老 lǎo *always (colloquial)*

向來 xiànglái *always (in the past up to the present time)*

從來 / 从来 cónglái *never (Note: 從來/从来 must be followed by negation.*

When 從來/从来 is used, the verb is usually suffixed with the experiential suffix 過/過 guò)

你老吃豆腐。今天吃別的東西吧！

你老吃豆腐。今天吃別的東西吧！

nǐ lǎo chī dòufu. jīntiān chī biéde dōngxi ba!

You always eat beancurd. Eat something else today!

我從來沒出過國。

我從來沒出過國。

wǒ cónglái méi chūguó guó.

I have never been abroad before.

Special Focus

都 dōu *all/always*

The basic function of 都 dōu is to indicate that something is true for an entire noun phrase. The NP to which 都 dōu refers must come before the VP.

- When the subject is plural, the presence of 都 dōu typically indicates that the VP is true for the entire subject:

我都看過了那些書。
wǒ dōu kànguo le nàxiè shū.
④ 我都看過了那些書。
我都看過了那些書。
I've read all of those books before.

日本、中國、我都去過。
日本、中國、我都去過。
Rìběn, Zhōngguó, wǒ dōu qùguo.
Japan, China, I have been to them both.
我都去過日本、中國。
我都去過日本、中國。
wǒ dōu qùguo Rìběn,
Zhōngguó.

都 dōu can be interpreted as referring to the object if the object is implied but not specified.

我都懂。

wǒ dōu dǒng.

I understand completely.

(你的話，) 我都懂。
Wǒ dōu dǒng.

(你的話，) 我都懂。

(ní de huà ,) wǒ dōu dǒng.

(What you say,) I understand completely.

I understand everything you say.

都 dōu can occur before or after negation. The relative position of 都 dōu and negation influences the meaning of the sentence.

都 dōu before negation indicates that the negated predicate refers to the entire

- NP:

Not true for the entire subject

我們都不喜歡那個電影。
我們都不喜歡那個電影。

wǒmen dōu bù xǐhuān nà ge diànyǐng.

We all do not like that movie. (None of us like that movie.)

我們都沒吃過日本菜。

我們都沒吃过日本菜。

wǒmen dōu méi chīguò Rìběn cài.

We have all not eaten Japanese food. (None of us have eaten Japanese food.)

Not true for the entire object

你的話，我都不懂。

你的话，我都不懂。

nǐ de huà, wǒ dōu bù dǒng.

What you said, I don't understand at all. (I completely do not understand.)

日本、中國、我都沒去過。

日本、中国、我都没去过。

Rìběn, Zhōngguó, wǒ dōu méi qùguo.

Japan, China, I haven't been there.

都 dōu after negation indicates that the negated predicate does not refer to all of

the NP. That is, it conveys the meaning *not all*.

Not all of the subject

我們都不喜歡那個電影。

我们都不喜欢那个电影。

wǒmen dōu xǐhuān nà ge diànyǐng.

Not all of us like that movie. (Some of us don't like it.)

Q: 今天的晚會，你的同學都來

嗎？

今天的晚会，你的同学都来

吗？

jīntiān de wǎnhuì, nǐ de tóngxué
dōu lái ma?

Are all of your classmates coming to tonight's party?

Not all of the object

Q: 你懂嗎？

你懂吗？

nǐ dǒng ma?

Do you understand?

Q: 中國菜，你都喜歡嗎？

中国菜，你都喜欢吗？

zhōngguó cài, nǐ dōu
xǐhuān ma?

Do you like all Chinese food?

■ Words that translate 都 dōu in English include *all*, *both*, *always*, etc. Note that

Mandarin does not use separate words to distinguish two entities (*both*) from more than two entities (*all*).

■ 都 dōu is used with question words to indicate indefinite meaning. (See Chapter

8: Questions and Question Words.)

誰都喜歡吃餃子。

谁都喜欢吃饺子。

shéi dōu xǐhuān chī jiǎozǐ.

Everyone likes to eat dumplings.

Inclusion and Continuity

也 yě also

還/還 hái still

仍然 réngrán continuously

一直 yí zhí still, as before

向來/x向來 xiànglái all along/always in the past up to the present

一向 yí xiàng all along/always in the past up to the present

(often used with negation)

A: 不都來。

不都来。

bù dōu lái.

They won't all come. (not all)

弟弟想明天到海邊去玩。妹妹也想去。
弟弟想明天到海边去玩。妹妹也想去。

dìdi xiǎng míngtiān dào hǎibiān qù wán. mèimei yě xiǎng qù.

Younger brother is going to the ocean tomorrow to have fun. Younger sister wants to go too.

我一向不喜歡看電影。

我一向不喜欢看电影。

wǒ yǐxiāng bù xǐhuān kàn diànyǐng.

I've never liked to watch movies.

我一直想去中國學習。

我一直想去中国学习。

wǒ yǐzhí xiǎng qù Zhōngguó xuéxí.

I've always wanted to go to China to study.

你已經吃了很多。還想吃嗎？

你已经吃了很多。还想吃吗？

nǐ yǐjīng chī le hěn duō. hái xiǎng chī ma?

You've already eaten a lot. Do you still want to eat?

她仍然是我的好朋友。

She is still my good friend.

tā réngrán shì wǒ de hǎo péngyou.

She is still my good friend.

Frequency, Repetition and Quantity

再三 zài sān repeatedly

往往 wángwǎng often/frequently

常常 cháng often

經常/j經常 jīngcháng regularly/frequently/without fail

再 zài do again in the future

又 yòu do again in the past

多 duō more

少 shǎo less

老師再三告訴我別忘了學習。

老師再三告訴我別忘了学习。

lǎoshī zài sān gào su wǒ bìe wàng le xuéxí.

The teacher told me again and again not to forget to study.

這個字我往往寫錯。

这个字我往往写错。

zhè ge zì wǒ wángwǎng xiècuò.

This character I often write incorrectly.

他經常幫助別人。

他经常帮助别人。

ta jīngcháng bāngzhù bìren.

He always helps others.

我今天又忘了怎麼寫。

我今天又忘了怎么写。

wǒ jīntiān yóu wàng le zěnmé xiě.

Today I forgot how to write it again.

我最好再寫幾次。

我最好再写几次。

wǒ zui hǎo zài xiě jǐ cì.

I'd best write it again several times.

他往往遲到。

他往往迟到。

tā wángwǎng chídào.

He's often late.

他常出去不關門。

他常出去不关门。

tā cháng chūqù bù guān mén.

He often goes out without shutting the door.

你得少看電視，多注意功課。

你得少看电视，多注意功课。

nǐ děi shǎo kàn diàntv, duō zhùyì gōngkè.

You should watch less television and pay more attention to your schoolwork.

Obligation

affirmative 應該/應該 yīnggāi should

應當/应当 yīngdāng should

該/該 gāi should

必得 bìdei must

得 děi must

必須/必須 bìxū must

非得 fēidéi must

negative 不應該/不應該	bù yīnggāi	need not; do not have to
不應當/不應當	bù yīngdāng	need not; do not have to
不該/不該	bù gāi	need not; do not have to
不必	bùbì	need not; do not have to
不用	bú yòng	need not; do not have to*
甭	béng	need not; do not have to (colloquial)
不須/不須	bù xū	not necessary to
可不	kě bù	should not
可別	kě bié	should not
(應)該不/(應)该不	(yǐng)gāi bù	must not

這件事情很重要。你可別忘了！

這件事情很重要。你可別忘了！

這件事情很重要。你可別忘了！

This matter is very important. Don't forget it!

你應該按時上課。不應該遲到。

你應該按时上课。不应该迟到。

You should come to class on time. You shouldn't be late.

你不必每天都洗頭髮。

你不必每天都洗头发。

nǐ bùbì měitiān dōu xǐ tóufa.
You don't have to wash your hair everyday.

我懂了。你甭再說了。

我懂了。你甭再说了。

wǒ dǒng le. nǐ béng zài shuō le.
I understand. You don't have to say it again.

註冊前必須付學費。

注册前必须付学费。

zhùcè qián bìxū fù xuéfēi.
Before you register you must pay tuition.

申請駕駛証，你非得親自去。

申請驾驶证，你非得亲自去。

shēnqǐng jiàshǐ zhèng, nǐ fēiděi qīnzhì qù.
When you apply for a driver's license you must go in person.

Note: While included in this group of adverbs, 應該 / 應該 / 該 / 该 and 應當 / 應當 have the properties of stative verbs. (See Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.)

Special Focus

非 V 不可 fēi V bù kě must

While not an adverb, the expression **非 V 不可** *fēi V bù kě must* is also used to indicate affirmative obligation. The literal meaning of **非 V 不可** *V bù kě* is *it is not possible to not do V*. Note that the verb is incorporated into the expression.

今天晚上的會議很重要。非去不可。

今天晚上的会议很重要。非去不可。

jīntiān wǎnshàng de huìyì hěn zhòngyào. fēi qù bù kě.
Tonight's meeting is very important. You must go.

這件事情很重要。非做不可。

这件事情很重要。非做不可。

zhè jiàn shìqing hěn zhònggrào. fēi zuò bù kě.
This task is very important. You must do it.

Certainty or Possibility

一定	yídìng	certainly
肯定	kěndìng	certainly
畢竟	bìjìng	after all, in the final analysis
的確	díquè	in fact, really
果然	guǒrán	sure enough
可能	kěnénɡ	possibly
也許/也許	yěxǔ	maybe
或者	huòzhě	perhaps (colloquial)
或許/或許	huòxǔ	perhaps, maybe (literary)

* 頑 *béng* is a contraction of 不用 *bú yòng*.

他說他今天晚上一定來。
他说他今天晚上一定来。

tā shuō tā jīntiān wǎnshàng yídìng lái.
He said he is definitely coming tonight.

Q: 你跟我去旅行嗎？ A: 我肯定去。
你跟我去旅行吗？ 我肯定去。

nǐ gēn wǒ qù lǚxíng ma? wǒ kědèng qù.
Q: Are you going to travel with me? A: I am definitely going.

他畢竟是一個小孩子。你不能對他要求太高。
他毕竟是一个小孩子。你不能对他要求太高。

tā biànzhì shì yì ge xiǎo háizi. nǐ bù néng dù ta yāoqǐng tài gāo.
He is only a child after all. You should not demand too much of him.

她的確是個好人。
她的确是个好人。

tā díquè shì ge hǎo rén.
She is certainly a good person.

他說他今天給我錢，果然給我錢了。
他说他今天给我钱，果然给我钱了。

tā shuō tā jīntiān gěi wǒ qián, guǒrán gěi wǒ qián le.
He said he would give me money today. Sure enough, he gave me money.

他說他今天給我錢，果然給我錢了。
他说他今天给我钱，果然给我钱了。

tā shuō tā jīntiān gěi wǒ qián, guǒrán gěi wǒ qián le.
He said he would give me money today. Sure enough, he gave me money.

他很忙，可能不會跟我們一起去看電影。
他很忙，可能不会跟我们一起去看电影。

tā hěn máng, kěnéng bù huì gēn wǒmen yíqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng.
He is very busy, (and) perhaps won't be able to go with us to see a movie.

她也許會晚一點。
她也许会晚一点。

tā yéxǔ huì wǎn yídiǎn.
Perhaps she will be a little late.

快一點吧！或者還來得及吃晚飯。
快一点吧！或者还来得及吃晚饭。

kuài yídiǎn ba! huozhě hái láidejí chí wǎnfàn.
Hurry up! Perhaps we will be on time for dinner.

或許我能做到此事。
或许我能做此事。
huòxū wǒ néng zuò cǐ shì.
Perhaps I will be able to do this.

Uniqueness or Punctuality

就 jiù only/precisely (see below for special focus)

才 cái only/merely, only then (see below for special focus)

光 guāng solely/merely

剛/gāng exactly/just

淨/jìng completely, merely/barely

僅/仅 jǐn merely/barely

正(在) zhèng (zài) precisely, right now

他光說，不願意做。
他光说，不愿意做。

tā guāng shuō, bù yuàn yì zuò.
He only talks, he's not willing to do anything.

他剛走了。
他刚走了。

tā gāng zǒu le.
He just left.

他淨讀書，都不出去玩。
他净读书，都不出去玩。

tā jìng dú shù, dōu bù chū qù wán.
He only studies, (and) he never goes out to have fun.

他們正(在)唱着歌呢。
他们正(在)唱着歌呢。

tāmēn zhèng(zài) chàngzhe gē ne.
They are singing right now.

* This example from Far East Chinese-English Dictionary (遠東漢英大詞典/遠東漢英大詞典 yuǎndōng hanying dà cídiǎn), Far East Publishing Company, 1995.

Special Focus**就 jiù - only, precisely**

- 就 jiù as a marker of uniqueness:

我就有一塊錢。
我就有一块钱。
wǒ jiù yǒu yì kuài qián.
I only have one dollar.

- 就 jiù as a marker of identification. In this sense it is often used to signal a location at the end of a series of directions:

書館就在這兒。
图书馆就在这儿。
túshūguǎn jiù zài zhèr.
The library is right here.

- As a marker of identification 就 jiù may also signal that a person has been located:

白：你找誰？
你找谁？
nǐ zhǎo shéi?
Who are you looking for?
王：我找白麗娜。
我找白丽娜。
wǒ zhǎo Bái Lìnà.
I am looking for Bai Lina.

- 白：我就是。

wǒ jiù shì.
That's me.

- 就 jiù as a marker of immediacy: the VP will happen momentarily.

我就來。
我就来。
wǒ jiù lái.
I'll be right there.

When 就 jiù occurs in sentences indicating narrative sequence, it contributes the meaning of immediacy: the second action happens right after the first one. (For more on sequence sentences, see Chapter 12: Phrase and Clause Connection.)

- 就 jiù as a marker of the speaker's perspective. It signals that

the situation expressed in the VP is less than what the speaker had expected.

- When 才 cái occurs in a simple sentence, it can often be translated with the English word *only* or *merely*.

她才五歲。
她才五岁。
tā cí wǔ suì.
She is only 5 years old.

你才吃了一點。
你才吃了点。
nǐ cí chí le yídiǎn.
You've only eaten a little.

- 才 cái may occur before the second VP in a series of two VPs. In this case, it often indicates that the event described by the second VP occurs *only after* the completion of the event described by the first VP. The VPs may have different subjects.

我們做完了事才能下班。
我们做了事才能下班。
wǒmen zuòwán le shì cí néng xià bān.
Only after we finish work can we go off duty.
(Literally: After we finish work, only then can we go off duty.)

等你把作業做完才能看電視。
等你把作业做完才能看电视。
děng nǐ bǎ zuòyè zuòwán cí néng kàn diàntívī.
Wait until you finish your homework and only then can you watch television.

你跟我去我才願意去。

你跟我去我才愿意去。

nǐ gēn wǒ qù wǒ cài yuànji qù.

*Only if you go with me am I willing to go.
(literally: If you go with me, only then am I willing to go.)*

Approximation

幾乎/几乎	jīhū	just about/almost
差一點/差一點	chà yídiǎn	almost (usually in negative context)
差不多	chàbaiduō	almost

快 kuài almost, momentarily, soon

他的狗幾乎被車壓死了。

他的狗几乎被车压死了。

tā de gǒu jīhū bì chē yāsī le.

His dog was almost crushed to death by a car.

我差一點忘了。

我差一点忘了。

wǒ chà yídiǎn wàng le.

I almost forgot.

他差不多都懂。

tā chàbaiduō dōu dǒng.

He understands almost everything.

現在差不多兩點一刻。

现在差不多两点一刻。

xìnzài chàbaiduō liǎng diǎn yī kè.

Now it is almost 2:15.

我們快做完了。

我们快做完了。

wǒmen kuài zuòwán le.

We're almost done.

Note: For expressions used in numerical approximations, see 'Estimates and Approximations' in Chapter 1: Numbers.

Temporal Reference

Beginnings and Endings

原來/原来	yuánlái	originally, at first, all along
本來/本来	běnlái	originally, at first
當初/当初	dāngchū	originally, at first
起初	qǐchū	originally, at first (same as 當初/当初)
最後/最后	zui hou	finally, in the end
最終/最终	zuì zhōng	finally, in the end (literary)
到底	dàodǐ	after all

我以為她是中國人，原來她是日本人。

我以为她是中国，原来她是日本人。

wǒ yǐwéi tā shì Zhōngguó rén, yuánlái tā shì Rìběn rén.

I thought she was Chinese. All along she was Japanese.

他本來對歷史沒有興趣，現在他很喜歡學歷史了。

他本来对历史没有兴趣，现在他很喜欢学历史了。

tā běnlái duì lìshǐ méi yǒu xìngqù, xiànzài tā hěn xǐhuān xué lìshǐ le.

Originally he wasn't interested in history. Now he likes to study it a lot.

我當初不喜歡學中文，最後喜歡了。

我当初不喜欢学中文，最后喜欢了。

wǒ dāngchū bù xǐhuān xué Zhōngwén, zui hou xǐhuān le.

At the beginning I didn't like to study Chinese. In the end I liked it.

他起初有一點緊張，後來他放心了。

他起初有一点紧张，后来他放心了。

tā qǐchū yǒu yídiǎn jǐnzhāng, hòulái tā fàng xīn le.

At the beginning he was a bit nervous, afterwards he calmed down.

她非常努力，最終達到了目的。

她非常努力，最终达到了目的。

ta feicháng nǔlì, zuì zhòng dàdào le mùdì.

She was extremely hardworking, (and) in the end she achieved her goal.

你到底喜不喜歡他？

你到底喜不喜欢他？

nǐ dàodǐ xǐ bù xǐhuān tā?

After all, do you like him or not?

Other Temporal Reference	
忽然	hūrán
突然	tūrán
快	kuài
馬上/马上	mǎshàng
剛才/刚才	gāngcái
近來/近来	jìnlái
曾經/曾经	céngjīng
暫時/暂时	zànshí

suddenly	突然
suddenly and unexpectedly	忽然
soon	快
immediately	馬上/马上
just before now	剛才/刚才
recently	近來/近来
once in the past	曾經/曾经
temporarily	暫時/暂时

我忽然想起來了他的名字。
我忽然想起來了他的名字。
I suddenly remembered his name.

他突然死了。
He suddenly and unexpectedly died.

這件事來得很突然。
這件事來得很突然。
This matter came up very suddenly and unexpectedly.

我們得馬上回家。
我們得馬上回家。
We have to go home immediately.

我剛才說的話你懂不懂？
我剛才說的話你懂不懂？
The thing I just told you, do you understand (it) or not?

對不起。我近來沒辦法跟你聯絡。
对不起。我近来没办法跟你联络。
I am sorry. I recently have been unable to get in touch with you.

我曾經告訴過你學中文很有意思。
我曾经告诉过你学中文很有意思。
I already told you, studying Chinese is very interesting.

對不起，我們暫時沒有電。

对不起，我们暂时没有电。

dùibuqǐ, wǒmen zànshí méiyǒu diàn.

I am sorry. We temporarily do not have electricity.

Speaker Perspective

These adverbs are subjective, conveying the speaker's attitude towards an event. See Chapter 14: Speaker Perspective, for additional structures which convey speaker perspective and for additional exercises using these adverbs.

明明	mingmíng	clearly
好像	hǎoxiàng	seemingly, apparently
顯得/显得	xiǎndé	seemingly, apparently
並/并	bìng	not at all (must occur with negative)
居然	jurán	unexpectedly
白	bái	in vain
徒然	túrán	in vain

明明

好像

顯得/显得

並/并

居然

白

徒然

簡直/简直

明明

顯得/显得

並/并

居然

白

徒然

簡單

他居然請我吃晚飯了。

他居然请我吃晚饭了。

tā jūrán qǐng wǒ chī wǎnfàn le.

He unexpectedly invited me to dinner. (Out of the blue, he invited me to dinner.)

今天沒考試。我白預備了。

今天没考试。我白预备了。

jùntiān méi kǎoshí. wǒ bái yùbèi le.

There was no test today. I wasted my time studying.

商店都已經關門了。我們徒然來了。

商店都已经关门了。我们徒然来了。

shàngdiàn dōu yǐng guān mén le. wǒmen túrán lái le.

The stores have all already closed. We came in vain.

他說的話我簡直不懂。

他说的话我简直不懂。

tā shuō de huà wǒ jiǎnzhí bù dǒng.

I simply don't understand what he says.

1. Select the best adverb from among the choices to complete each sentence.

1. 他說他懂。他 — 不懂。(並，又，向來)

他说他懂。他 — 不懂。(并，又，向来)

tā shuō tā dǒng. tā — bù dǒng. (bìng, yòu, xiànglái)

He said he understands. He really doesn't understand.

2. 我 — 不吃肉。(肯定，一向，原來)

wǒ — bù chī ròu. (kědìng, yīxiàng, yuánlái)

I never eat meat.

3. 我 — 不會出國。(的確，暫時，畢竟)

wǒ — bù huì chū guó. (díquè, zànshí, biyǐn)

I temporarily am unable to leave the country.

4. 我們 — 喝茶。今天喝汽水吧。(常，老，從來)

wǒmen — hé chá. jùntiān hé qǐshuǐ ba. (cháng, lǎo, cónglái)

We always drink tea. Today let's drink soda.

5. 我 — 没喝過汽水。(向來，一直，從來)

wǒ — méi héguò qǐshuǐ. (xiànglái, yízhí, cónglái)

I've never drunk soda before.

6. 她 — 在那兒工作。(也，仍然，光)

她 — 在那儿工作。(也，仍然，光)

tā — zài nàr gōngzuò. (yě, réngrán, guāng)

She is still working there.

7. 學生 — 不喜歡考試。(一向，一直，還)

學生 — 不喜欢考试。(一向，一直，还)

xuésheng — bù xǐhuān kǎoshí. (yìxiàng, yǐzhí, hái)

Students always don't like to take exams.

8. 我 — 吃中國飯。(常，都，再三)

我 — 吃中国饭。(常，都，再三)

wǒ — chī Zhōngguó fàn. (cháng, dōu, zài sān)

I often eat Chinese food.

9. 我昨天晚上 — 吃了中國飯。(一直，也，又)

我昨天晚上 — 吃了中国饭。(一直，也，又)

wǒ zuótān wǎnshàng — chī Zhōngguó fàn. (yízhí, yě, yòu)

Last night I ate it again.

10. 我想學生都 — 吃冰淇淋。

(應該，不必，必須；都，多，得)

我想學生都 — 吃冰淇淋。

(应该，不必，必须；都，多，得)

wǒ xiǎng xuésheng dōu — chī bingqílin.

(yinggāi, bùbì, bìxì; dōu, duō, dé)

I think students should all eat more ice cream.

11. 大學生 — — 喝啤酒。(必得，可別，應該；少，再，往往)

大學生 — — 喝啤酒。(必得，可别，应该；少，再，往往)

dàxué shèng — — hé píjiǔ.

(bìdeī, kě bié, yǐnggāi; shǎo, zài, wángwǎng)

College students should drink less beer.

12. 老師說我們 — — 睡覺。

(不用，應該，必得；再三，常，多)

老師說我們 — — 睡觉。

(不用，应该，必得；再三，常，多)

lǎoshi shuō wǒmen — — shuì jiào.

(bùyòng, yǐnggāi, bìděi; zài sān, cháng, duō)

Teacher says we should sleep more.

13. 大學生 —— 把太多時間花在電子郵件上。
 (不應該，不必，不用)
 大學生 —— 把太多時間花在電子郵件上。
 (不應該，不必，不用)
- dàxuéshēng —— bǎ tài duō shíjiān huā zài diànzì yóujìjiàn shàng.
College students shouldn't spend so much time on email.
14. 她 —— 很年輕。(又，一定，仍然)
 她 —— 很年轻。(又，一定，仍然)
 tā —— hěn niánqīng. (yòu, yídìng, réngrán)
She's still very young.
15. 媽媽 —— 喝咖啡。(老，都，就)
 妈妈 —— 喝咖啡。(老，都，就)
 māma —— hé kāfēi. (lǎo, dōu, jiù)
Mom always drinks coffee.
16. 學生 —— 做功課。(應當，必須，不必)
 学生 —— 做功课。(应当，必须，不必)
 xuéshēng —— zuò gōngkè. (yīngdāng, bìxū, bùbì)
Students must do their schoolwork.
17. 那個飯館的飯 —— 好吃。(一向，畢竟，的確)
 那个饭馆的饭 —— 好吃。(一向，毕竟，的确)
 nà ge fanguǎn de fàn —— hào chī. (yīxiàng, bìjìng, díquè)
The dishes in that restaurant are really good.
18. 現在 —— 九點了。上課吧。(幾乎，就，差不多)
 现在 —— 九点了。上课吧。(幾乎，就，差不多)
 xiànzài —— jiǔ diǎn le. shàng kè ba. (jǐhū, jiù, chàbùduō)
It's almost 9 o'clock. Let's go to class.
19. 你 —— 不喜歡吃這個菜。(也許，從來，居然)
 你 —— 不喜欢吃这个菜。(也许，从来，居然)
 nǐ —— bù xǐhuān chī zhè ge cài. (yéxǔ, cónglái, jūrán)
Perhaps you won't like this dish.
20. 我 —— 不喜歡。(當然，仍然，果然)
 我 —— 不喜欢。(当然，仍然，果然)
 wǒ —— bù xǐhuān. (dāngrán, réngrán, guǒrán)
Sure enough, I didn't like it.

21. 老師說我 —— 會考得很好。(顯得，一直，一定)
 老师说我 —— 会考得很好。(显得，一直，一定)
 lǎoshī shuō wǒ —— huì kǎo de hěn hǎo. (xiǎndé, yízhì, yídìng)
Teacher says I can definitely do well on the exams.
22. 那個大學的學生 —— 很聰明。(的確，肯定，畢竟)
 那个大学的学生 —— 很聪明。(的确，肯定，毕竟)
 nà ge dàxué de xuéshēng —— hěn cōngming. (díquè, kěndìng, bìjìng)
The students in that college are in fact really smart.
23. 我們都是朋友。你 —— 客氣。(爾，非得，不應該)
 我们都是朋友。你 —— 客气。(爾，非得，不应该)
 wǒmen dōu shì péngyou. nǐ —— kèqì. (erbéng, fēiděi, bù yīnggāi)
We are all friends. You don't have to be so polite.
24. 他 —— 覺得有一點累。(馬上，快，忽然)
 他 —— 觉得有一点累。(马上，快，忽然)
 tā —— juéde yǒu yídiǎn lèi. (mǎshàng, kuài, hūrán)
He suddenly felt a little tired.
25. 他 —— 對京劇有興趣。(曾經，一向，仍然)
 他 —— 对京剧有兴趣。(曾经，一向，仍然)
 tā —— dù jīngjù yǒu xìngqù. (céngjīng, yīxiàng, réngrán)
He's always been interested in Beijing opera.
2. Complete this paragraph by filling in the blanks with the appropriate adverbs.
- 我弟弟跟他的朋友 —— 喜歡打籃球。
 我弟弟跟他的朋友 —— 喜欢打篮球。
 wǒ dìdi gēn tā de péngyou —— xǐhuān dǎ lángqiú.
My younger brother and his friends all like to play ball.
 - 每天下了課以後他們 —— 到公園去打球。
 每天下了课以后他们 —— 到公园去打球。
 měitiān xià le kè yǐhòu tāmen —— dào gōngyuán qù dǎ qiú.
Every day after class they always go to the park to play ball.
 - 到了夏天，他們早上 —— 到公園去。
 到了夏天，他们早上 —— 到公园去。
 dào le xiàtiān, tāmen zǎoshang —— dào gōngyuán qù.
When it gets to be summer, they go right to the park in the morning.

CHAPTER 5

4. 晚上六七點鐘 — 在公園裏打球。
晚上六七点钟 — 在公园里打球。
wǎnshàng liù qī diǎn zhōng — zài gōngyuán lǐ dǎ qiú.
At 6 or 7 o'clock in the evening they are still in the park playing ball.

5. 天黑了他們 — 回家。
天黑了他们 — 回家。

When it gets dark, only then do they go home.

6. 第二天 — 來公園打球。
第二天 — 来公园打球。

dì èr tiān — lái gōngyuán dǎ qiú.
The next day they come to the park again to play ball.

7. 天氣不好 — 不打。
天气不好 — 不打。

tāiqì bù hǎo — bù dǎ.
Only when the weather is bad do they not play. (When the weather is bad, only then do they not play.)

Prepositions and Prepositional Phrases

COMMONLY USED PREPOSITIONS

The following is a list of the most common Mandarin prepositions. Those that are only used in formal, literary contexts are marked as "Lit."

General Prepositions

跟	gēn	with, from (receive from a source)
給/給	gěi	to/for (transmit to a person or do for the benefit of a person)
替	tì	for, on behalf of (a person)
對/對	duì	towards (in the direction of a person or location (does not involve movement))
為/為	wéi	for, on behalf of
由	yóu	by (a person or other initiator of the action), as a result of (Lit.)
於/于	yú	in, at on; by (a person or other initiator of the action) (Lit.)
用	yòng	with (an object which functions as an instrument)

Prepositions Referring to Location or Time

到	dào	to (location or time) (involves movement)
從/从	cóng	from (location or time) (involves movement)
自從/自从	zìcóng	from (time) (Lit.)
在	zài	at (location or time)
進/进	jìn	into (a location) (involves movement)
出	chū	out of (a location) (involves movement)
往	wáng	towards (a location; involves movement)
朝	cháo	towards (a person or location) (involves movement) (Lit.)
向	xiàng	towards (a person or location) (involves movement)

PROPERTIES OF PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

- Prepositions must be followed by a NP. The NP that follows the preposition is the *object* of the preposition, and the preposition + object is a prepositional phrase (PP).

你有空嗎？我想跟你談話。

你有空吗？我想跟你谈话。

nǐ yǒu kōng maì wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ tán huà.
Do you have free time? I want to speak with/to you.

- In Mandarin, the PP goes before the Verb + Object. Note that in English, the PP goes after the Verb + Object.

他每天跟女朋友聊天。

tā měitiān gēn nǚ péngyóu liáo tiān.
He chats with his girlfriend every day.

- Nothing goes between the PP and the following verb. Adverbs, and other modifiers either go before the PP or after the object of the verb:

Correct

這本書請你再給我看一看。

这本书请你再给我看看。

zhè běn shū qǐng nǐ zài gěi wǒ kàn kàn.
*This book, please read it to me again.
(Please read this book to me again.)*

我明天會給他打電話。

我明天给他会打电话。

wǒ míngtiān gěi tā huì dǎ diànhuà.
I will call him tomorrow.

Incorrect

◎這本書請你給我再看看。

这本书请你给我再看看。

zhè běn shū qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ zài kàn kàn.
Please read this book to me again.

◎我明天給他會打電話。

我明天给他会打电话。

wǒ míngtiān gěi tā huì dǎ diànhuà.
I will call him tomorrow.

THE MEANING OF MANDARIN PREPOSITIONS

Mandarin prepositions are often somewhat different from prepositions in English in the meaning they convey.

One English Preposition, Several Different Mandarin Prepositions

To

- If the preposition indicates movement to a location or time, with the location as the intended destination, the Mandarin preposition is 到 dào.

我到圖書館去了。

我到图书馆去了。

wǒ dào túshūguǎn qù le.
I went to the park.

我每天上午九點到下午三點上課。

我每天上午九点到下午三点上课。

wǒ měitiān shàngwǔ jiǔ diǎn dào xiàwǔ sāndiǎn shàng kè.
I attend class every day from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m.

- If the preposition indicates movement towards a direction or location which is not the final destination, the Mandarin preposition is 往 wǎng, 向 xiàng, or 前 cháo.

他往北走了。

tā wǎng běi zǒu le.
He went (towards) the north.

他向山走了。

tā xiàng shān zǒu le.
He went towards the mountains.

- If the preposition indicates a recipient, the Mandarin preposition is 给/gěi.

昨天晚上我給媽媽寫信了。

昨天晚上我给妈妈写信了。

zuótíān wǎnshàng wǒ gěi māma xiě xìn le.
Last night I wrote a letter to mom. (to: Mom is the recipient)

With

- If the preposition indicates joint participant in some situation described by the verb, the Mandarin preposition is 跟 gēn.

我每天跟朋友吃午飯。

我每天跟朋友吃午饭。

wǒ měitiān gēn péngyóu chī wǔfan.
I eat lunch with friends every day.

- If the preposition indicates an instrument used by the subject to perform the action of the verb, the Mandarin preposition is 用 yòng.

我不會用毛筆寫字。

我不会用毛笔写字。

wǒ bù huì yòng máobì xiě zì.
I can't write characters with a Chinese writing brush.

One Mandarin Preposition, Several Different English Prepositions

給/給 gěi

- If the preposition indicates the beneficiary of the action, the English preposition is *for*.

孩子想給媽媽做晚飯。
The children are planning to cook dinner *for mom*.

孩子想給媽媽做晚飯。

給/給 gěi

- If the preposition indicates the beneficiary of the action, the English preposition is *for*.

This school was established in 1843.

由 yóu by

這件事情由他自己去做吧。
这件事情由他自己去做吧。

zhè jiàn shìqíng yóu tā zìjǐ qù zuò ba.
This matter should be taken care of by him.

自從/自从 (date) (以來/以来) zì cóng (date) (yǐ lái) from (date)
自從一九九一年以來，中國不斷地發展。
自从一九九一年以来，中国不断地发展。

zìcóng yī jiǔ jiǔ yī nián yǐlái, Zhōngguó bùdúàn de fāzhǎn.
Since 1991 China has been developing continuously.

PREPOSITIONS AND VERBS

Some words function either as a preposition or as a verb depending upon the context.

Preposition	Verb
對/對 duì to/towards	to be correct
給/給 gěi to/for	to give
跟 gēn with	to follow
到 dào to (a location)	to arrive
進/jìn into	to enter

The context will always make it clear whether a word is functioning as a preposition or as a verb. If it is a preposition, it will always be followed by an object NP and then by a verb. If it is a verb, it may be followed by an object NP, but the object NP will not be followed by a verb. Compare these:

as a Preposition

as a Verb

對/對 duì 他沒對我說話。
不对！
他没对我说话。
不对！

bú duì!

He did not speak to me.

not correct!

Prepositions Associated with Formal, Literary Language

朝 cháo towards

朝前走。你可以看到一個學校。
朝前走。你可以看到一个学校。
cháo qián zǒu. nǐ kěyǐ kàn dào yì ge xuéxiào.
Go straight ahead. (lit: Go towards the front.) You can see a school.

他沒對我說話。
不对！
他没对我说话。
不对！

tā méi duì wǒ shuō huà.
He did not speak to me.

not correct!

給/gěi 我想給媽媽寫信。
我想給媽媽寫信。

wǒ xiǎng gěi māma xiě xìn.

I'm planning to write a letter to mom.
I'm planning to write a letter to mom.

他不願意給我錢。
他不願意給我錢。

tā bù yuàn yì gěi wǒ qián.
He's not willing to give me money.

弟弟老跟着媽媽。
弟弟老跟着媽媽。

dìdì lǎo gēn zhe māma.
Little brother is always following mom.

弟弟老跟着媽媽。
弟弟老跟着媽媽。

wǒ měi ge zhōumò gēn tā chī fàn.
I eat with him every weekend.
I eat with him every weekend.

弟弟老跟着媽媽。
弟弟老跟着媽媽。

你什麼時候到我家來？
你什麼時候到我家來？

nǐ shénme shíhou dào wǒ jiā lái?
When are you coming to my house?

你什麼時候到我家來？
你什麼時候到我家來？

請進。
請進。

qǐng jìn.
Please enter.

請進。
請進。

tā jìn chéng qù le.
He went into the city.
He went into the city.

他進城去了。
他進城去了。

wǒ bǎ wǒ de chē mài gěi tā le.
I sold my car to him.
I sold my car to him.

我把我的車賣給他了。
我把我的車賣給他了。

wǒ bǎ wǒ de zhàng píng yuàn mǎi gěi tā le.
I sold my gift to the teacher.
He presented a gift to the teacher.

我把我的禮物送給老師了。
我把禮物送給老師了。

給/gěi as a Verb Suffix

給/gěi may serve as a suffix on verbs which involve the movement of a direct object to a recipient:

借給/借給 jiègěi loan to

送給/送給 sònggěi send to

賣給/卖給 mài gěi sell to

還給/还給 huángěi return to

fùmǔ ____ kèrén hěn kèqì.
Father and mother are very polite to guests.

父母 ____ 客人很客氣。
父母 ____ 客人很客氣。

wǒmen ____ shàng zǒu ba.
Let's go up.

我們 ____ 上走吧。
我們 ____ 上走吧。

wǒ ____ wǒ xiě xìn.
My boyfriend writes to me every day.

我的男朋友每天 ____ 我寫信。
我的男朋友每天 ____ 我寫信。

wǒ de nán péngyoudi ____ wǒ xiě xìn.
My boyfriend writes to me every day.

我的男朋友每天 ____ 我寫信。
我的男朋友每天 ____ 我寫信。

1. Complete these sentences by adding the appropriate preposition to match the English meanings.

1. 我不想 ____ 他說話了。
我不想 ____ 他说话了。

wǒ bù xiǎng ____ tā shuō huà le.
I don't want to speak with him anymore.

2. 我弟弟 ____ 科學很有興趣。
我弟弟 ____ 科学很有兴趣。

wǒ didì ____ kexué hěn yǒu xìngqù.
My younger brother is very interested in science.

3. 他 ____ 媽媽說「我長大了要當科學家。」
他 ____ 妈妈说「我长大了要当科学家。」

tā ____ māma shuō "wǒ zhǎng dà le yào dǎng kexué jiā."
He said to mom "When I grow up I want to be a scientist."

4. 孩子 ____ 媽媽包餃子。姐姐 ____ 朋友出去買東西。
孩子 ____ 妈妈包饺子。姐姐 ____ 朋友出去买东西。

háizi ____ māma bāo jiǎozì jiějǐ ____ péngyou chūqu mǎi dōngxi.
The children wrap dumplings with mom. Older sister is going out with her friends to buy things.

In these structures, the recipient follows the verb + 給/給 gěi. The direct object of the verb is typically presented as the object of 把 bǎ.

9. 今天的天氣非常好。我們——公園裏吃飯吧。
今天的天气非常好。我们——公园里吃饭吧。

jīntiān de tiānqì fēicháng hǎo. wǒmen —— gōngyuán lǐ chī fàn ba.

Today's weather is extremely good. Let's eat in the park.

10. Q: 你是——哪兒來的？ A: 我是——波士頓來的。
你是——哪儿来的？我是——波士顿来的。

nǐ shì —— nǎr lái de? wǒ shì —— Bōshìdūn lái de.

Q: *Where are you from?* A: *I am from Boston.*

11. 王老師——張老師上課了。
王老师——张老师上课了。

Wáng lǎoshi —— Zhāng lǎoshi shàng kè le.
Teacher Wang taught class for Teacher Zhang.

12. 我——地理有興趣。
我——地理有兴趣。

wǒ —— dìlǐ yǒu xìngqù.
I am interested in geography.

13. 我每個週末開——紐約去吃中國飯。

我每个周末开——纽约去吃中国饭。

wǒ měi ge zhōumò kāi —— Niǔyù qù chī Zhōngguó fàn.

Every weekend I drive to New York to eat Chinese food.

14. 汽車——建國門駛去。

汽車——建国门驶去。

qìchē —— Jiànguó Mén shǐqù.

The car is driving towards Jianguo Gate.

15. 這件事——您處理。

这件事——您处理。

zhè jiàn shì —— nín chǔlǐ.

This matter should be handled by you.

16. 侍者——客人打開車門。

侍者——客人打开车门。

shìzhě —— kèrén dǎkāi chē mén.

The attendant opened the car door for the guests.

The Suffixes 了 le , 着 zhe , and 過/guo

了 le

了 le may occur at the end of the sentence (S-了 le) or it may follow the verb (V-了 le). The meaning contributed by 了 le in a sentence depends upon whether it is S-了 le or V-了 le. The properties of these two types of 了 le are as follows.

S-了 le

Sentence-final 了 le (S-了 le) indicates that the sentence provides information that is new in some way.

- The situation is a change from a previous situation.
你長得很高了！
你长得很高了！
- The situation is new information for the listener.
我不吃肉了。
wǒ bù chī ròu le.
I don't eat meat now/anymore.

You have grown tall!/You have become tall!

The situation is new information for the listener.

她快(要)畢業了。
她快要毕业了。

tā kuài (yào) bì yè le.

She graduates soon.

S-了 occurs before the question marker 嘴/嘴 ma and other sentence-final particles.

他的病好了嗎？
他的病好了吗？

tā de bìng hǎo le ma?
Has his illness gotten better?

東西貴了吧。

东西贵了吧。

dōngxi guì le ba.
Things have probably gotten more expensive.

In negated sentences, negation + S-了 can be translated as *not anymore*.

我不愛你了。

我不愛你了。

wǒ bù ài nǐ le.
I don't love you anymore.

1. Translate the following Mandarin sentence into English, capturing the meaning of S-了 in each sentence.

1. 你的孩子高了。

nǐ de háizi gāo le.

2. 我今天早晨坐了公共汽車了。

(公共汽車/public bus)

我今天早晨坐了公共汽车了。

wǒ jīntiān zǎochén zuò le gōnggōng qìchē le.

3. 我不吃早飯了。

wǒ bù chī zǎofàn le.

4. 妹妹說她不喜歡你了。

mèimei shuō tā bù xǐhuān nǐ le.

5. 弟弟寫字寫得很快了。

dìdì xiě zì xiě de hěn kuài le.

6. 我這個星期很忙了。

wǒ zhè ge xīngqī hěn máng le.

7. 我不坐飛機了。
我不坐飞机了。

wǒ bù zuò fēijī le.

8. 我不想考試了。
我不想考试了。

wǒ bù xiǎng kǎo shì le.

9. 今天忽然冷了。
今天忽然冷了。

jīntiān hūrán lěng le.

10. 我們已經走了很遠了。我累了，不能走了。
我们已经走了很远了。我累了，不能走了。

wǒmen yǐjīng zǒu le hěn yuǎn le. wǒ lèi le, bù néng zǒu le.

V-了 le

V-了 in Independent Sentences

- The verb suffix 了 le (V-了 le) signals the termination of an action.* When V-了 le is suffixed to the last verb of the sentence, it may also be interpreted as conveying past tense. Here are the characteristics of V-了 le.
- V-了 le only occurs in affirmative sentences.

我已經吃了早飯。
我已经吃了早饭。

wǒ yǐjīng chīle zǎofàn.
I already ate breakfast.

老師買了很多書。
老师买了很多书。

lǎoshī mǎile hěn duō shū.
Teacher bought a lot of books.

她昨天看了電影。
她昨天看了电影。

tā zuótiān kànle diànyǐng.
She saw a movie yesterday.

* Linguists refer to this as 'perfective aspect.' For more on aspect in Mandarin see Smith, Carlota. *The Parameter of Aspect*. Dordrecht and Boston: Kluwer Academic Publishers, 1991.

- V-了 le can only be suffixed onto activity verbs and achievement verbs. Stative verbs are never suffixed with V-了 le. 了 le can follow a stative verb, but only if the stative verb occurs at the end of the sentence and conveys the sense of change or new information. In this case, 了 le has the meaning of S-了 le.

我喜歡豆腐了。
⑧ 我喜歡了豆腐。
我喜歡豆腐了。
我喜歡了豆腐。

wǒ xǐhuān dòufu.
wǒ xǐhuānle dòufu.
I like beancurd now.

飛機票最近漲價了。

飛机票最近涨价了。
fēijī piào zuìjìn zhǎngjià le.
Airplane tickets have recently gone up in price.

- If a verb suffixed with V-了 le has a one-syllable object, V-了 le typically occurs after the object. If the object is two or more syllables, V-了 le occurs directly after the V.

我已經吃飯了。
我已經吃了。

wǒ yǐjǐng chī fàn le.
I already ate.

我吃了早飯了。
我吃了早饭了。

wǒ chīle zǎofàn le.
I ate breakfast.

- Rewrite these sentences, adding V-了 where appropriate, to correspond to the meaning of the following English sentences.

- 我看一個電影。
我看一个电影。
wǒ kàn yī ge diànyǐng.
I saw a movie.

- 我吃晚飯。
我吃晚饭。
wǒ chī wǎnfàn.
I ate dinner.

3. 哥哥畢業。
哥哥毕业。
gēge bì yè.
Older brother graduated.

4. 我今天早上考試。
我今天早上考试。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng kǎo shì.
I took a test this morning.

5. 我這個星期考中文。
我这个星期考中文。
wǒ zhè ge xīngqī kǎo Zhōngwén.
I took a Chinese test this week.

6. 我今天早上買兩枝鉛筆。
我今天早上买两枝铅笔。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng mǎi liángzhī qiānbì.
This morning I bought two pencils.

7. 我們昨天晚上吃意大利菜。
我们昨天晚上吃意大利菜。
wǒmen zuótīan wǎnshàng chī Yídàilí cài.
Last night we ate Italian food.

8. 他們在海邊玩一天。
他们在海边玩一天。
tāmen zài hǎibian wán yītiān.
They had fun at the beach for a whole day.

9. 我在香港住幾個月。
我在香港住几个月。
wǒ zài Xiānggǎng zhù jǐ ge yuè.
I lived in Hong Kong for several months.

10. 我昨天晚上看電視看半個小時。
我昨天晚上看电视看半个小时。
wǒ zuótīan wǎnshàng kàn diànshì kàn bàn ge xiǎoshí.
Last night I watched television for half an hour.

11. 昨天晚上宿舍很冷。
昨天晚上宿舍很冷。
zuótīan wǎnshàng sùshè hěn lěng.
Last night the dormitory was very cold.

12. 我在北京看幾次京劇。
我在北京看几次京剧。

wǒ zài Běijīng kàn jǐ cì jīngjù.
I saw Beijing Opera several times in Beijing.

Non-occurrence of Events: 沒有 + V méi yǒu + V

V- 了 indicates that an event occurred. It cannot be used in negative sentences. To indicate that an event did not happen in the past, the verb is preceded by 没 méi or 没有 méi yǒu and is not followed by 了 le. Compare the following:

我没吃早饭。

我沒吃了早饭。

wǒ méi chī le zǎofàn.
I did not eat breakfast.

老師沒買書。

老师没买了书。

lǎoshī méi mǎi shū.
Teacher did not buy a book.

Note: 還沒(有)/還沒有(hái méi) yǒu + V can be translated as *not yet*.

我還沒(有)吃早飯。

我还没(有)吃早饭。

wǒ hái méi (yǒu) chī zǎofàn.
I have not eaten breakfast yet.

老師還沒(有)買書。

老师还没有(有)买书。

lǎoshī hái méi (yǒu) mǎi shū.
Teacher has not bought a book yet.

3. Rewrite these sentences in Mandarin in negative form to indicate that the event did not occur. Translate your sentences into English.

1. 我昨天在公園裏跑步了。

我昨天在公园里跑步了。

wǒ zuótān zài gōngyuán lǐ pǎo bù le.
I ran in the park yesterday.

2. 我妹妹買了毛衣。

我妹妹买了毛衣。

wǒ mèimeī mǎi le máoyī.
My younger sister bought a sweater.

3. 我姐姐買了鞋子。

我姐姐买了鞋子。

wǒ jiějie mǎi le xiézǐ.
My older sister bought shoes.

4. 妹妹今天穿了她的毛衣。

mèimeī jīntiān chuān le tā de máoyī.

Younger sister wore her sweater today.

5. 弟弟昨天給他的女朋友寫信了。
弟弟昨天给他的女朋友写信了。

dìdi zuótān gěi tā de nǚ péngyǒu xiě xìn le.

Yesterday younger brother wrote a letter to his girlfriend.

6. 我哥哥昨天跟朋友打球了。

wǒ gēge zuótān gēn péngyǒu dǎ qíu le.

My older brother played ball with his friends yesterday.

7. 我昨天晚上看了電視。

wǒ zuótān wǎnshàng kàn le diàntv.

I watched television last night.

8. 我昨天給媽媽寫了電子郵件。

wǒ zuótān gěi māma xiě le diànnzì yóujìan.

Yesterday I wrote an email to mom.

9. 我昨天晚上洗頭了。

wǒ zuótān wǎnshàng xǐ tóu le.

Last night I washed my hair.

10. 我今天早上上了中文課。

wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng shàng le Zhōngwén kè.

This morning I attended Chinese class.

Sequence: V- 了 in Serial Verb Phrases

A Mandarin sentence may include a series of verb phrases or clauses which are related in terms of sequence. Here are the characteristics of the use of V- 了 to mark sequence.

V-了 occurs directly after the first verb in the series.*

我下了課回家去。

我下了课回家去。

wǒ xià le kè huí jiā qù.

After I get out of class I go home.

The adverb 就 jiù may occur before the second verb phrase.

我下了課(就)回家去。

我下了课(就)回家去。

wǒ xià le kè (jiù) huí jiā qù.

After I get out of class I return home.

The sequence connector 以後 yǐhòu may occur at the end of the first verb phrase. (See Chapter 12: Phrase and Clause Connection.)

我下了課(以後)就回家去。

wǒ xià le kè (yǐhòu) jiù huí jiā qù.

After I get out of class I return home.

Note: Any or all of V-了, 就 jiù, and 以後/yǐhòu may be omitted from sequence sentences.

每天都一樣。下課回家。

每天都一样。下课回家。

měitiān dōu yǐyàng, xià kè huí jiā.

Every day is the same. (I) get out of class and return home.

Sequence in the Past

To indicate that the entire sequence occurred in the past, V-了 must also occur in the second verb phrase, either after the verb, or, if the verb has a one-syllable object, at the end of the sentence.

我下了課(就)回家去了。

我下了课(就)回家去了。

wǒ xià le kè (jiù) huí jiā qù le.

After I got out of class I returned home.

4. Translate the following sequence sentences into English. Make sure to determine whether the sentence refers to a past or non-past sequence of events.

1. 弟弟看了電影就回家。

弟弟看了电影就回家。

dìdi kàn le diànyǐng jiù huí jiā.

2. 我買了車就開到紐約去了。

我买了车就开到纽约去了。

wǒ mǎi le chē jiù kāi dào Niǔyuē qù le.

3. 我們吃了飯就上課。(上課/上課 shàng kè attend class)

我們吃了饭就上课。

wǒmen chī le fàn jiù shàng kè.

4. 客人來了我們就說「歡迎」。(歡迎/欢迎 huānyíng welcome)

客人来了我们就说「欢迎」。

kèrén lái le wǒmen jiù shuō 「huānyíng」.

5. 那個孩子看了狗就哭了。(狗 gǒu dog, 嚎 kū cry)

那個孩子看了狗就哭了。

nà ge háizi kàn le gǒu jiù kū le.

6. 我昨天晚上吃了晚飯以後就睡覺了。(睡覺/睡觉 shuì jiào sleep)

我昨天晚上吃了晚饭以后就睡觉了。

wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng chī le wǎnfàn yǐhòu jiù shuì jiào le.

7. 他們回了家以後就看了電視。(電視/电视 diànshì television)

他们回了家以后就看了电视。

tāmen huí le jiā yǐhòu jiù kàn le diànshì.

8. 我姐姐買了東西以後就拿回家給我看。(東西/东西 wǒ jiějie mǎi le dōngxi yǐhòu jiù ná huí jiā gěi wǒ kàn kàn.

我姐姐买了东西以后就拿回家给我看看。(东西/东西 wǒ jiějie mǎi le dōngxi yǐhòu jiù ná huí jiā gěi wǒ kàn kàn.

9. 你畢了業以後做什麼?(畢業/毕业 bì yè graduate)

你毕了业以后做什么?

nǐ bì le yè yǐhòu zuò shéme?

* Some speakers permit V-了 to occur after the object of the verb.

10. 她每天起了床就喝一杯茶。(起床 qǐ chuáng get out of bed)
tā měitiān qǐ le chuáng jiù hē yí bēi chá.

5. Translate these into Mandarin.

1. After I take the test I will see a movie.

2. After I graduate I will go to China.

3. Yesterday, after I got out of class I went to the park.

4. I reviewed Chinese and then watched television.

5. After we get out of class let's go to the park.

Double 了 le

A sentence may contain V-了 le and S-了 le. V-了 le indicates that the action of the verb is completed. S-了 le indicates that the information presented in the sentence is a change of some kind or is new to the listener.

Q: 你想吃早饭吗?

你想吃早饭吗?

那本书你还在看吗?

你已经吃了早饭了吗?

Do you want to eat breakfast?

A: 我已经吃了早饭(了)。

我 已经吃了早饭(了)。

wǒ yǐjīng chī le zǎofàn ma?

I already ate breakfast.

Q: 那本书你还在看吗?

那本书你还在看吗?

nà běn shū nǐ hái zài kàn ma?

You're still reading that book?

A: 我已经看了一半了。明天就可以看完。

我 已经看了一半了。明天就可以看完。

wǒ yǐjīng kàn le yī bàn le. míngtiān jiù kěyǐ kàn wán.

I've already read half. I'll finish it tomorrow.

V-着 zhe

The verb suffix V-着 zhe marks the duration or continuity of a situation.* V-着 zhe serves as a suffix on activity verbs and on achievement verbs which have resulting states. (See Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.)

Here are the primary functions of V-着 zhe.

- V-着 zhe signals that an activity is ongoing. In this case, the verb may be preceded by 在 zài, 正 zhèng, or 正在 zhèng zài. The sentence may be

concluded with the final particle 呢 ne. Note that 着 zhe, 在 zài, 正 zhèng and 呢 ne are all optional and may be omitted. Chinese speakers vary in their use of these words.

他正开着车。

他在开着车呢。

tā zhèng kāizhe chē.

He is driving the car.

他在开着车呢。

他在开着车呢。

tā zài kāizhe chē ne.

He is driving a car.

■ V-着 zhe emphasizes the duration or unchanging nature of a situation.

孩子在地板上坐着。

háizi zài dìbǎn shàng zuòzhe.

The children are sitting on the floor.

猫在沙发 上躺着。

maō zài shāfā shàng tiāngzhe.

The cat is lying on the sofa.

墙上挂着一张山水画儿。

qiáng shàng guàzhe yí zhāng shānshuǐ huàr.

There is a landscape painting hanging on the wall.

■ V-着 zhe signals that two situations occur at the same time.

他们看着电视吃东西。

他们看着电视吃东西。

tāmen kānzhe diànshì chī dōngxi.

They are watching television and eating.

■ V-着 zhe signals that a situation is background to a more important event.

老师让学生站着念书。

老师让学生站着念书。

lǎoshi ràng xuéshēng zhànzhe niān shù.

The teacher made the students recite standing up.

*Linguists refer to the meaning conveyed by V-着 zhe as 'imperfective aspect'!

她拉着孩子的手過馬路。
她拉着孩子的手过马路。

tā lazhe háizi de shǒu guò mǎlù.
Holding the child's hand, she crosses the street.

我們握着手談話。
我们握着手谈话。

wǒmen wòzhe shǒu tán huà.
Shaking hands, we chatted.

那個媽媽背着孩子做飯。
那个妈妈背着孩子做饭。

nà ge mama bēizhe háizi zuò fàn.
The mother cooked holding the child on her back.

6. Translate these Mandarin sentences into English.

1. 我在吃着飯呢。

wǒ zài chīzhe fàn ne.

2. 他正唱着歌呢。

tā zhèng chàngzhe gē ne.

3. 他正玩着球呢。

tā zhèng wánzhe qiú ne.

4. 小明正做着功課。

Xiǎo Míng zhèng zuòzhe gōngkè.

5. 安靜！老師正在說話呢。

ānjìng! lǎoshī zhèng zài shuō huà ne.

6. 老師坐着跟學生說話。

lǎoshī zuòzhe gēn xuésheng shuō huà.

7. 爸爸看着書吃早飯。

bàba kànzhě shū chī zǎofàn.

8. 錢太太拿着書走到圖書館去了。

Qián tāitai názhě shū zǒu dào túshūguǎn qù le.

9. 學生常聽着音樂做功課。
学生常听着音乐做功课。

xuésheng cháng tingzhe yīnyuè zuò gōngkè.
xuésheng cháng tingzhe yīnyuè zuò gōngkè.

10. 媽媽喝着咖啡看報紙。

māma hēzhě kāfēi kàn bàozhǐ.
māma hēzhě kāfēi kàn bàozhǐ.

V-過/過 guo

In addition to functioning as a full verb, 過/過 guo can serve as a verb suffix that indicates that the speaker has performed an activity before. V-過/過 guo is sometimes called the *experiential* suffix, since it indicates that the subject has had the experience of performing the action some time in the past.*

The following are the characteristics of V-過/過 guo:

V-過/過 guo can serve as a suffix on verbs which describe repeatable events.

Repeatable Event

Non-Repeatable Event

* See Li, Charles and Sandra Thompson. Mandarin Chinese: A Functional Reference Grammar. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1981, p. 226.

■ V-過/guò indicates that V occurred at a time removed from present time.

Compare the meaning contributed by 過/guò and 已 le in the following sentences.

他斷過他的大腿。
He broke his leg (and at the time of speaking it is still broken.)

他斷了他的大腿。
He broke his leg (and at the time of speaking it is now healed.)

■ V-過/guò can occur in negative, as well as affirmative sentences.

我沒去過中國。
I have never been to China before.

In affirmative sentences with V-過/guò, the adverb 已經/yǐjīng already or 曾經/céngjing already may occur before the verb phrase. (See Chapter 4: Adverbs.) In negative sentences, the adverb 還/hái may occur before the negated verb phrase, indicating *not yet*.

我已經去過中國。
I have already been to China before.

我還沒去過中國。
I have not been to China yet.

■ V-過/guò can occur with V-了 le. When they both occur, 過/guò precedes 了 le.

我看過了那部電影。
I have seen that movie.

我看過了那部電影。
I have seen that movie.

7. Translate the following Mandarin sentences into English.

1. 我已經看過那本書。我不再看了。

2. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

3. 我沒吃過法國飯。

4. 你開過車嗎？

5. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

6. 我沒去過老師的家。你去過嗎？

7. 我沒看過中國電影。

8. 我曾經用過毛筆寫字。

9. 我曾經用過毛筆寫字。

10. 我還沒去過中國。

11. 我已經去過中國。

12. 我還沒去過中國。

13. 我沒吃過法國飯。

14. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

15. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

16. 你開過車嗎？

17. 我沒去過老師的家。你去過嗎？

18. 我沒看過中國電影。

19. 我曾經用過毛筆寫字。

20. 我還沒去過中國。

21. 我已經去過中國。

22. 我還沒去過中國。

23. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

24. 你開過車嗎？

25. 我沒吃過法國飯。

26. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

27. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

28. 我沒吃過法國飯。

29. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

30. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

31. 你開過車嗎？

32. 我沒去過老師的家。你去過嗎？

33. 我沒看過中國電影。

34. 我曾經用過毛筆寫字。

35. 我還沒去過中國。

36. 我已經去過中國。

37. 我還沒去過中國。

38. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

39. 你開過車嗎？

40. 我沒吃過法國飯。

41. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

42. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

43. 你開過車嗎？

44. 我沒吃過法國飯。

45. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

46. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

47. 你開過車嗎？

48. 我沒吃過法國飯。

49. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

50. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

51. 你開過車嗎？

52. 我沒吃過法國飯。

53. 我們在中國的時候坐過公共汽車。

54. 媽媽學過日語，可是她沒去過日本。

8. Answer the following questions truthfully in Mandarin. use 過/guò in all of your answers.

1. Have you been to China before?

2. Have you eaten Beijing duck before? (北京烤鴨 / Beijing kǎoyā Beijing roast duck)

3. Have you played frisbee before? (玩飛盤/玩飞盘 wán fēipán play frisbee)

4. Have you seen the Great Wall before? (萬里長城/万里长城 Wàn lǐ Chángchéng the Great Wall)

CHAPTER 7

5. Have you sung karaoke before? (唱卡拉OK chàng kǎlā OK sing karaoke)
 6. Have you cooked Chinese food before? (做中國飯/做中国饭 zuò Zhōngguó fàn cook Chinese food)

7. Have you read a Chinese newspaper before? (看中文報紙/看中文报纸 kàn Zhōngwén bàozhǐ read Chinese newspaper)

8. Have you driven a sportscar before? (開跑車/开跑车 kāi pǎochē drive sportscar)

9. Have you drunk green tea before? (喝綠茶/喝綠茶 hē lǜ chá drink green tea)

10. Have you seen Beijing Opera before? (看京劇/看京剧 kàn jīngjù see Beijing Opera)

The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes

THE RESULTATIVE STRUCTURE

Activity verbs (e.g. 看 kàn to read/to look, 寫/写 xiě to write, 聽/听 tīng to listen, 買/买 mǎi to shop) refer to open-ended actions without a specified result or conclusion. To indicate the result or conclusion of an activity, a resultative suffix (RV-suffix) is added to the activity verb. The verb that is formed is a 'resultative verb.' (For more on activity verbs see Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.)

Activity Verb + RV-Suffix Resultative Verb

看 看 兒 wán 看兒 kàn wán
*to read/to look to finish to read to the point of finishing:
 to finish reading*

聽/听 tīng 懂 dǒng 聽/听 懂 tingdǒng
*to listen to understand to listen to the point of understanding:
 to understand by hearing*

RV-suffixes are achievement verbs or stative verbs. Any verb whose meaning describes the result of an activity can function as an RV-suffix. Here is a list of some commonly occurring suffixes.

Common RV-Suffixes	
到 dào	acquire, obtain possession
完 wán	finish
見/见 jiàn	perceive
懂 dǒng	understand
好 hǎo	reach a successful conclusion
錯/错 cuò	do incorrectly
着 zháo	acquire (like 得 dào)
掉 diào	to disappear or fall down
起來/起来 qǐlái	to raise up; to begin to do
住 zhù	to stick
開/开 kāi	to open
飽/饱 bǎo	to be full

夠	gòu	to be enough
乾淨 / 干淨	gānjìng	to be clean
醉	zuì	to be drunk
上	shàng	on; to go up
下	<td>down; to go down</td>	down; to go down

那件事情我都忘掉了。

nà jiàn shìqǐng wǒ dōu wàngdiào le.
I completely forgot about that matter.

我買錯了課本。

wǒ mǎicuò le kèběn.

I bought the wrong textbook.

他把衣服洗乾淨了。

tā bǎ yīfú xǐ gānjìng le.

He washed the clothes clean.

我們說好了明天早上六點出發。

wǒmen shuōhǎo le míngtiān zǎoshang liù diǎn chūfā.

We've agreed to leave tomorrow morning at 6 a.m.

她把門開開了。

tā bǎ mén kāikāi le.

She opened the door.

你吃飽了嗎？

nǐ chībǎo le ma?

Are you full? Did you eat until you were full?

Resultative Verbs are Indivisible Words

The verb + resultative suffix forms a resultative verb, a single, indivisible word. Aspectual suffixes must go at the end of the resultative verb, following the RV-suffix:

我昨天晚上看了那本書。

我昨天晚上看了那本書。

wǒ zuótīan wǎnshàng kàn le wán
wǒ zuótīan wǎnshàng kàn le wán
nà běn shù.
I finished that book last night.

新的詞彙我都記住了。
新的詞彙我都記住了。
xīn de cíhuì wǒ dōu jìzhù le.
I memorized all of the new vocabulary.

Resultative Verbs and Negation

In negative form, resultative verbs typically describe events which did not occur.

Therefore, they are negated by 沒 or 沒有. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guo.)

老師說的話，我都沒聽懂。

老師说的话，我都没听懂。

lǎo shī shuō de huà, wǒ dōu méi tīngdǒng.
I didn't understand at all what the teacher said.

你今天上了課嗎？我沒看到你。

你今天上了课吗？我没看到你。

nǐ jīntiān shàng le kè ma? wǒ méi kàndào nǐ.
Did you go to class today? I didn't see you.

1. Select the correct resultative verb to complete each sentence.

- 我妹妹學得很好。中文書她都 ____ 了。(看見，看完，看懂)
我妹妹学得很好。中文书她都 ____ 了。(看见，看完，看懂)
wǒ mèimei xué de hěn hǎo. Zhōngwén shù tā dōu ____ le.
(Kāijiān, kàn wán, kǎndǒng)
My younger sister studies well. She completely understands her Chinese books.
- 我還沒 ____ 中英字典。(買到，買錯，買起來)
我还没 ____ 中英字典。(买到，买错，买起来)
wǒ hái méi ____ Zhōngyīng zìdiǎn. (mǎidào, mǎicuò, mǎiqiāi)
I still haven't bought a Chinese English dictionary.
- 對不起。我 ____ 了你的名字。(寫完，寫好，寫錯)
对不起。我 ____ 了你的名字。(写完，写好，写错)
duìbuqǐ. wǒ ____ le nǐ de míngzì. (xiěwán, xiěhǎo, xiècuò)
I'm sorry. I wrote your name wrong.
- 這本書我還沒 ____。(看完，看到，看見)
这本书我还没 ____。(看完，看到，看见)
zhè bìng shù wǒ hái méi ____ . (kànwán, kàndào, kànjian)
I still haven't finished reading this book.

5. Q: 你 — 了那個小鳥嗎？ A: — 了。(看完，看到，看見)

你 — 了那個小鳥嗎？ — 了。(看完，看到，看見)
nǐ — le nà ge xiǎo niǎo ma? — le. (kànwán, kàndào, kànjian)

Q: Did you see that little bird? A: I saw it.

6. 我們 — 了那個中國電影。(看到，看好，看懂)

我們 — 了那個中國電影。(看到，看好，看懂)
wǒmen — le nà ge Zhōngguó diànyǐng. (kàndao, kànhaò, kàndǒng)

We understood (by watching) the Chinese movie.

7. 我的錢都 — 了。(用好，用到，用完)

我的錢都 — 了。(用好，用到，用完)
wǒ de qián dou — le. (yònghǎo, yòngdào, yòngwán)

My money is all used up.

8. 你 — 了你朋友的家嗎？(找到，找着，找完)

你 — 了你朋友的家嗎？(找到，找着，找完)
nǐ — le nǐ péngyou de jiā ma? (zhǎodào, zhǎozháo, zhǎowán)

Did you find your friend's house?

9. 我的化學課本都沒 — 。(看懂，看完，看到)

我的化學課本都沒 — 。(看懂，看完，看到)
wǒ de huàxué kèběn dōu méi — . (kàndǒng, kànwán, kàndào)

I did not understand my chemistry textbook at all.

10. 老師叫我們把書 — 。(打起來，打開，打着)

老師叫我們把書 — 。(打起来，打开，打着)
lǎoshī jiào wǒmen bǎ shū — . (dǎqlai, dǎkāi, dǎzháo)

Teacher told us to open up our books.

2. Answer each question in complete Mandarin sentences in the affirmative or negative as indicated.

1. 你找到了你的手錶嗎？

你找到了你的手錶嗎？
nǐ zhǎodào le nǐ de shǒubiāo ma?

Did you find your watch?

NO:

2. 你聽懂了老師的話嗎？

你听懂了老师的话吗？
nǐ tīngdǒng le lǎoshī de huà ma?

Did you understand what the teacher said?

YES:

3. 你把那個字寫錯了嗎？
你把那个字写错了吗？
nǐ bǎ nà ge zì xiècuò le ma?
YES:

4. 你寫完了那封信嗎？
你写完了那封信吗？
nǐ xiěwán le nà fēng xìn ma?
Did you finish writing the letter?

5. 你做完了作業嗎？
你做完作业了吗？
nǐ zuòwán le zuòyè ma?
Did you finish doing your homework?

- NO:
6. 你買到了新的大衣嗎？
你买到新的大衣了吗？
nǐ mǎidào le xin de dàiyi ma?
Did you buy a new overcoat?

- YES:

7. 你吃飽了嗎？
你吃饱了吗？
nǐ chībǎo le ma?
Are you full? Did you eat until full?

- NO:

8. 你把你行李收拾完了嗎？
你把你行李收拾完了吗？
nǐ bǎ ní de xínglì shōushe wán le ma?
Did you finish packing your suitcases?

- YES:

9. 你找到了那個新的中國飯館嗎？
你找到了那个新的中国饭馆吗？
nǐ zhǎodào le nà ge xīn de Zhōngguó fānguǎn ma?
Did you find that new Chinese restaurant?

- NO:

10. 你記住了那首詩嗎？
nǐ jìzhù le nà shǒu shī ma?
Did you memorize that poem?
YES:

The Potential Form of Resultative Verbs

得 dé and 不 bù may occur between the activity verb and the RV-suffix to indicate the potential form of the resultative verb. Note that 得 and 不 occur in neutral tone in these expressions.

The Meaning of the Potential Form

- 得 de indicates that it is possible to achieve the result or conclusion specified by the RV-suffix:

這件衣服很大，你一定穿得上。
zhè jiàn yīfú hěn dà, nǐ yìdìng chuāndeshàng.
This article of clothing is very big. You can certainly put it on.

那本書不太長，我想你一天看得完。
nà běn shù bù tài cháng, wǒ xiǎng nǐ yítiān kànđewán.
That book isn't very long. I think you can finish reading it in one day.
- 不 bù indicates that it is not possible to achieve the result or conclusion specified by the RV-suffix:

他說得太快，我聽不懂。
tā shuō de tài kuài, wǒ tīngbùdǒng.
He speaks too fast. I don't understand (by listening).

飯太多，我們可能吃不完。
fàn tài duō, wǒmen kěnéngr chībuuwán.
There is too much food. We might not be able to finish eating it.

Note: Some resultative endings only occur in potential form.

V-得 & 得じ to be in time to V
V-不及 & 不及 to not be in time to V

- 快一點。還來得及上課。
kuài yídiǎn. hái láidejí shàng kè.
Hurry up. We can still make it in time for class.

- 已經九點了。我們來不及看電影。
yǐjīng jiǔ diǎn le. wǒmen láibùjí kàn diànyǐng.
It's already 9 o'clock. We won't be in time to see the movie.

V-得起 deqǐ able to afford to V

- 我買不起那個牌子的手錶。
wǒ mǎibùqǐ, nà ge páizi de shǒubìǎo.
I can't afford to buy that brand of watch.
- 我吃不起龍蝦。
wǒ chībùqǐ lóngxiā.
I can't afford to eat lobster.
- 你住得起紐約市嗎？
nǐ zhùdeqǐ Niǔyuē shì ma?
Can you afford to live in New York City?

Note the special meaning of 看不起 kànbuqǐ to look down on, and the more restricted 看得起 kàndeqǐ to show respect for.

- 他看不起別人。
tā kànbuqǐ biérén.
He looks down on other people.
- 你這樣做，看得起誰？
nǐ zhèiyàng zuò, kàndejǐ shéi?
When you behave this way, who do you show respect for?

The Potential Form in Verb-NEG-Verb Questions

Resultative verbs in the potential form can be used in V-NEG-V questions. As with all V-NEG-V questions, the affirmative form precedes the negative form.

他的話，你聽得懂聽不懂？
他的话，你听得懂听不懂？

tā de huà, nǐ tīngde dōng tīngbu dōng?

Can you understand what he says?

3. Complete these sentences with the appropriate resultative verb.

1. 他說得太快。我 ____。
他说得太快。我 ____。

tā shuō de tài kuài. wǒ ____.
He speaks too fast. I don't understand (by listening).

2. 書店沒有這本書了。我 ____。
书店没有这本书了。我 ____。

shūdiàn méi yǒu zhè běn shù le. wǒ ____.
The bookstore doesn't have this book anymore. I can't buy it.

3. 你在圖書館 ____ 吧！
你在图书馆 ____ 吧！

nǐ zài túshūguǎn ____ ba!
You can borrow it at the library!

4. 人太多。我怕你們 ____。
人太多。我怕你们 ____。

rén tài duō. wǒ pà nǐmen ____.
There are too many people. I'm afraid you won't be able to sit down.

5. 這些字太小。我 ____。
这些字太小。我 ____。

zhèxiè zì tài xiǎo. wǒ ____.
These characters are too small. I can't see (can't read) them.

6. 弟弟在哪兒？我們都 ____ 他。
弟弟在哪儿？我们都 ____ 他。

dìdì zài nǎr? wǒmen dōu ____ tā.
Where is younger brother? We can't find him.

7. 我們一定 ____ 十個比薩餅。(比薩餅/bí sà bǐng pizza pieces)
我們一定 ____ 十个比萨饼。
wǒmen yìdèng ____ shí ge bísà bǐng.
We certainly can't finish eating 10 pizzas.

8. 我 ____ 林肯車。
我 ____ 林肯车。
wǒ ____ Linkēn chē.
I can't afford a Lincoln Continental.

9. 我 ____ 外國人的名字。
我 ____ 外国人的名字。
wǒ ____ wàiguórén de míngzì.
I can't remember foreigners' names.

10. 你 ____ 黑板嗎？
你 ____ 黑板吗？
nǐ ____ héibǎn ma?
Can you see the blackboard?

The Potential Form in Directional Expressions

得 de and 不 bù may be used in directional expressions to indicate the potential form. When they are used, they occur between the verb of motion and the directional suffix. (See also Chapter 9: Location, Directional Movement, and Distance.)

門太窄，這個沙發我們可能搬不進去。
门太窄，这个沙发我们可能搬不进去。
mén tài zhǎi. zhè ge shāfā wǒmen kěnéng bānbù jìnqù.

The door is too narrow. We might not be able to move the sofa in.

4. Complete these sentences by adding the appropriate RV-ending to the verb. The RV-ending in each sentence is a directional expression.

1. 我累了。走 ____。
wǒ lèi le. zǒu ____.
I'm too tired. I can't walk back.

2. 那個人太高。他進 ____ 飛機的門。
那个人太高。他进 ____ 飞机的门。
nà ge rén tài gāo. tā jìn ____ fēijī de mén.

That man is too tall. He cannot enter the airplane's door.
(movement is away from the speaker)

3. 那本字典太重。我拿 ____。
那本字典太重。我拿 ____。
nà běn zìdiǎn tài zhòng. wǒ ná ____.
That dictionary is too heavy. I can't pick it up.

4. 那座山太高。我們一定爬_____。(爬 pá to climb)
 那座山太高。我们一定爬_____。
 nà zuò shān tài gāo. wǒmen yíding pá _____.
That mountain is too tall. We certainly cannot climb up it.
5. 公園的門太低。車子開_____。
 公园的门太低。车子开_____。
 gōngyuán de mén tài dī. chēzi kāi _____.
The park gate is too low. Cars cannot drive in.

THE POTENTIAL SUFFIXES: -得了 deliǎo able to and -不了 builǎo unable to follow

The potential suffixes -得了 deliǎo *able to* and -不了 builǎo *unable to* follow activity verbs and achievement verbs. Notice that 得 and 不 occur in neutral tone in these expressions.

The Meaning of the Potential Suffixes

- 得了 deliǎo indicates that it is possible to perform the action described by the verb:

她很有本事。將來做得了大事。
 她很有本事。将来做得了大事。
 tā hěn yǒu běnshì. jiānglái zuòdeliǎo dà shì.
She has a lot of talent. In the future she will be able to do big things.

我怎么能忘得了你的名字?
 我怎么能忘得了你的名字?
 wǒ zěnmé néng wàngdeliǎo nǐde míngzì?
How could I forget your name?

- 不了 builǎo indicates that it is not possible to perform the action described by the verb:

我開不了大卡車。
 我开不了大卡车。
 wǒ kāibulǎo dà kǎchē.
I am unable to drive a truck.

Compare the meaning of the potential suffixes with that of RV-suffixes.
 Potential suffixes indicate that the action of the first verb may or may not happen.
 RV-suffixes indicate that the result may or may not be obtained.

V + Resultative Suffix V occurs; result is possible or not

這件事我今天做不完。

这件事我今天做得完。

那件事我一定做完了。

这件事我一定做得了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

這件事我一定做得了。

这件事我一定做得了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做得了。

这件事我一定做得了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

V + Potential Suffix Subject may or may not be able to do V

那件事我一定做不了。

这件事我做不了。

nǐ nábūliǎo zhèmè duō dōngxi.

CHAPTER 8

8. 你又買了雨衣嗎？你穿得了這麼多嗎？(穿 chuan *to wear*)
 你又买了雨衣吗？你穿得了这么多吗？
 nǐ yòu mǎi le yǔyī ma? nǐ chuān de liǎo zhème duō ma?

Questions and Question Words

QUESTIONS

Yes-No Questions

Asking Yes-No Questions

There are three common forms for yes-no questions: S 嗨/吗 ma, V-NEG-V, and 是否 shìfǒu + VP. S 嗨/吗 ma is the most neutral form of the yes-no questions. V-NEG-V and 是否 shìfǒu + V ask for a choice between two alternatives, one affirmative and one negative.

S 嗨/吗 ma

The question is in the form of a declarative sentence with the particle 嗨/吗 ma at the end:

Declarative Sentence

他是學生。

他是学生。

tā shì xuésheng.

He is a student.

他會說中文。

他会说中文。

tā huì shuō Zhōngwén.

He can speak Chinese.

她上大學。

她上大学。

tā shàng dàxué.

She attends college.

Verb-NEG-Verb

In most Verb-NEG-Verb questions, the verb is followed directly by the negated verb.

她是不是大學生？
她是不是大學生？
tā shì bù shì dàxuéshēng?
Is she a college student?

他會不會說中文？
他會不會說中文？
tā huì bù huì shuō Zhōngwén?

Can he speak Chinese?

她上不上大學？
她上不上大學？
tā shàng bù shàng dàxué?

Does she attend college?

If the verb phrase consists of a series of verbs, the first verb in the series is repeated in the question. Note that some verbs always occur as the first verb of a series of verbs. These include the stative verbs 會/huì, 能/néng, and 可以/kéyǐ, the obligation verbs 該/gāi, 應該/yīnggāi, and 應當/yīngdāng, and other verbs such as 慶意/yuàn yì to be *willing*, and 敢/gǎn to *dare*.

你今天晚上去看電影？
你今天晚上去看電影？
nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng qù bù qù kàn diànyǐng?
Are you going to see a movie tonight?

你敢不敢吃生魚片？
你敢不敢吃生魚片？
nǐ gǎn bù gǎn chī shēngyú piàn?
Do you dare eat raw fish (sashimi)?

你喜歡不喜歡吃日本菜？
你喜歡不喜歡吃日本菜？
nǐ xǐhuān bù xǐhuān chī Rìběn cài?
Do you like to eat Japanese food?

你會不會說中文？
你會不會說中文？
nǐ huì bù huì shuō Zhōngwen?
Can you speak Chinese?

你願意不願意跟他結婚？
你願意不願意跟他結婚？
nǐ yuàn yì bù yuàn yì gēn tā jiéhūn?
Are you willing to marry him?

If the verb is a two-syllable stative verb, a Verb-NEG-Verb question can be formed by repeating the first syllable:

你喜不喜歡吃日本菜？
你喜不喜歡吃日本菜？
nǐ xǐ bù xǐhuān chī Rìběn cài?
Do you like to eat Japanese food?

For questions referring to non-past situations, if the verb is 是/shì or 有/yǒu or 會/huì, Verb + NEG may also occur after the object.

你是學生不是？
你是學生不是？
nǐ shì xuéshēng bù shì?
Are you a student?

你有錢沒有？
你有錢沒有？
nǐ yǒu qián méi yǒu?
Do you have money?

Marker of Negation

If the verb is 有/yǒu the marker of negation must be 沒有/méi yǒu.
你有沒有錢？
你有沒有錢？
nǐ yǒu méi yǒu qián?
Do you have money?

For all other verbs, in sentences referring to non-past situations, negation is 不/bù.

你是不是學生？

你是不是學生？

nǐ shì bù shì xuéshēng?

Are you a student?

nǐ chī bù chī ròu?

你吃不吃肉？

nǐ chī bù chī ròu?

Do you eat meat?

If the verb is an activity verb or achievement verb and *the sentence refers to an event in past time*, negation is 沒 méi or 没有 méi yǒu. Notice that the affirmative verb is typically followed by 了 le or 過/guо. 了 le never follows the negated verb. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guо.)

Q: 你是學生嗎？
A: 是。
你是學生嗎？
nǐ shì xuéshēng ma?
Are you a student?

Q: 你吃了沒有？
A: 全。
你吃了沒有？
nǐ chī le méi yǒu?
Have you eaten?

Note: If the sentence refers to a situation in past time, Verb-NEG-Verb questions typically take the form: Verb + Object 没有 méi yǒu.

Q: 你看過那個電影沒有？
A: 全。
你看過那個電影沒有？
nǐ kànɡuo nà ge diànyǐng méi yǒu?
Have you seen that movie?

Q: 你喜歡沒有？
A: 全。
你喜歡沒有？
nǐ xǐhuān méi yǒu?
Do you like it?

是否 shǐfǒu occurs immediately before the VP. The form is more formal and literary than the other yes-no question forms.

明天你是否願意和我一起去機場接白老師？
明天你是否願意和我一起去机场接白老师？

míngtiān nǐ shǐfǒu yuàn yì hé wǒ yǐqǐ qù jīchǎng jiē Bái lǎoshī?

Are you willing to go to the airport with me tomorrow to pick up Professor Bai?

你是否去中國開會？

nǐ shǐfǒu qù Zhōngguó kāi huì?

你是否去中国开会？

nǐ shǐfǒu qù Zhōngguó kāi huì?

Are you going to China to attend a meeting?

Answering Yes-No questions

Answering 'Yes'

There is no word for 'yes' in Mandarin. The following are the most common ways to answer a yes/no question in the affirmative.

- Repeat the first verb in the verb phrase:

Q: 他是學生嗎？
A: 是。
他是學生嗎？
tā hūi shuō Zhōngguó ma?
Can he speak Chinese?

Q: 你喜歡不喜歡吃日本菜？
A: 喜歡。
你喜歡不喜歡吃日本菜？
nǐ xǐhuān bù xǐhuān chí Rìběn cài?
Do you like to eat Japanese food?

Q: 他會說中文嗎？
A: 是。
他是學生。
tā hūi shuō Zhōngwén ma?
Can he speak Chinese?

A: 我是學生。
他是學生。
wǒ shì xuéshēng ma?
I am a student.

A: 我喜歡吃日本菜。
我喜欢吃日本菜。
wǒ xǐhuān chí Rìběn cài.
I like to eat Japanese food.

If the question form is 嗨/嗎 ma or 是否 shǐfǒu, it can also be answered with 是 shì de it is the case.

Q: 他會說中文嗎？
他会说中文吗？
tā huì shuō Zhōngwén ma?
Can he speak Chinese?

A: 是的。
shì de
Yes.

Otherwise, negation is 不 bù.
Q: 你上大學嗎？
你上大学吗？
nǐ shàng dàxué ma?
Are you attend college?

A: 不上。
bú shàng.
No.

Q: 你餓嗎？
你饿吗？
nǐ è ma?
Are you hungry?

A: 是的。
shì de
Yes.

Q: 你是否說中文？
你是否说中文？
nǐ shìshì shuō Zhōngwén?
Do you speak Chinese?

A: 是的。
shì de
Yes.

If the main verb in the question is 是 shì, the question can also be answered with 对/dìu *correct*.
Q: 你是中國人嗎？
你是中国人吗？
nǐ shì Zhōngguó rén ma?
Do you have money?

Answering 'No'
A 'no' answer includes the marker of negation 不 bù or 没 méi. If the verb is 有 yǒu, negation is always 没有 méiyǒu.

Q: 你有錢嗎？
你有钱吗？
nǐ yǒu qián ma?
Do you have money?

A: 没有。
méiyǒu.
No.

If the main verb is an activity verb or an achievement verb, and negation indicates that the event did not happen in the past, the marker of negation is always 没 méi. The negative answer to V 了 le- and V-過/guo questions is always 没 méi + verb or 没有 méiyǒu. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過/guo.)

Q: 你已經吃了晚飯嗎？
你已经吃了晚饭吗？
nǐ yǐjǐng chī le wǎnfàn ma?
Have you already eaten dinner?

A: 没有。
méiyǒu.
No.

Otherwise, negation is 不 bù.
Q: 你上大學嗎？
你上大学吗？
nǐ shàng dàxué ma?
Do you attend college?

A: 'no' answer may take a long form or a short form. The short form is much more natural in most situations.
The long answer

Q: 你是否有錢嗎？
你有没有钱吗？
nǐ yǒu qián ma?
Do you have money?

A long negative answer is a restatement of the question in negative form.
Q: 你沒有錢嗎？
你没有钱吗？
nǐ méiyǒu qián ma?
Do you have money?

A: 我沒有錢。
wǒ méiyǒu qián.
I don't have money.

Q: 你上大學嗎？
你上大学吗？
nǐ shàng dàxué ma?
Do you attend college?

A: 我不上大學。
wǒ bú shàng dàxué.
I don't attend college.

In response to all forms of yes-no questions:

Q: 你忙嗎？
你忙吗？
nǐ máng ma?
Are you busy?

A: 不忙。
bú máng.
not busy.

Q: 你會說英文嗎？
你会说英文吗？
nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?
Can you speak English?

A: 不會。
bú huì.
can't.

If negation is 不 bù, the short 'no' answer is 不 bù + the first verb of the verb phrase.

Q: 你忙嗎？
你忙吗？
nǐ máng ma?
Are you busy?

A: 不忙。
bú máng.
not busy.

Q: 你會說英文嗎？
你会说英文吗？
nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?
Can you speak English?

A: 不會。
bú huì.
can't.

nǐ huì bú huì shuō Yīngwén?
Can you speak English?

Q: 你是否會說英文？
你是否会说英文？

A: 不會。
不会。

nǐ shùfǎn huì shuō Yīngwén?

Can you speak English?

A: 不願意。
不愿意。

bú yuàn yì.

not willing.

Q: 你願意不願意跟他結婚嗎？
你愿意不愿意跟他结婚吗？

A: 不願意。
不愿意。

bú yuàn yì.

not willing.

Q: 你願意不願意跟他結婚嗎？
你愿意不愿意跟他结婚吗？

A: 不願意。
不愿意。

bú yuàn yì.

not willing.

Q: 你是否願意跟他結婚。
你是否愿意跟他结婚。

A: 不願意。
不愿意。

bú yuàn yì.

not willing.

Q: 你敢吃生魚片嗎？
你敢吃生鱼片吗？

A: 不敢。
不敢。

bù gǎn.

don't dare.

Q: 你敢吃生魚片嗎？
你敢吃生鱼片吗？

A: 不敢。
不敢。

bù gǎn.

don't dare.

Q: 我們該給小費嗎？
我们该给小费吗？

A: 不該。
不该。

bù gāi.

shouldn't.

wǒmen gāi gěi xiǎofei ma?

Should we give a tip?

A: 不該。
不该。

bù gāi.

shouldn't.

wǒmen gāi bù gāi gěi xiǎofei?

Should we give a tip?

If negation is 沒 méi, the short negative answer is 沒有 méi yǒu.
你有錢嗎？ 沒有。
你有钱吗？ 没有。

nǐ yǒu qián ma? méi yǒu.
Do you have money?
No.

1. Write a yes-no question for each of the following answers. Use the question form presented after each answer.

1. 我很喜歡吃中國飯。(嗎/嗎 ma)
我很喜欢吃中国饭。

wǒ hěn xǐhuān chī Zhōngguó fàn.
I like to eat Chinese food very much.

2. 我是學生。(Verb-NEG-Verb)
我是学生。

wǒ shì xuéshēng.
I am a student.

3. 我家在加州。(嗎/嗎 ma)
我家在加州。

wǒ jiā zài Jiāzhōu.
My home is in California.

4. 我會用筷子吃飯。(Verb-NEG-Verb)
我会用筷子吃饭。

wǒ huì yòng kuàizi chī fàn.
I can use chopsticks to eat.

5. 我有一點累。(嗎/嗎 ma)
我有一点累。

wǒ yǒu yídiǎn lèi.
I am a little tired.

6. 我會說漢語。(Verb-NEG-Verb)
我会说汉语。

wǒ huì shuō Hànnyǔ.
I can speak Chinese.

7. 她有男朋友。(Verb-NEG-Verb)
她有男友。

tā yǒu nán péngyǒu.

She has a boyfriend.

8. 我去過中國。 (Verb-NEG-Verb)

我去过中国。

wǒ qùguó Zhōngguó.

I went to China before.

9. 我看過那個電影。 (Verb-NEG-Verb)

我看过那个电影。

wǒ kànɡuó nà ge diànyǐng.

I saw that movie before.

10. 那本書很有意思。 (Verb-NEG-Verb)

那本书很有意思。

nà běn shū hěn yǒu yìsī.

That book is very interesting.

11. 我對中國歷史有興趣。 (是否 shífǒu)

我对中国历史有兴趣。

wǒ duì Zhōngguó lìshǐ yǒu xìngqù.

I am interested in Chinese history.

12. 我吃飽了。 (Verb-NEG-Verb)

我吃饱了。

wǒ chībǎo le.

I've eaten until full. (I'm full.)

2. Answer “yes” to each of the following questions. Provide a short answer and a long answer.

1. 你是美國人嗎？

你是美国人吗？

nǐ shì Měiguó rén ma?

Are you an American?

2. 你會不會開車？

你会不会开车？

nǐ huì bù huì kāi chē?

Can you drive a car?

3. 你去過中國嗎？

你去过中国吗？

nǐ qùguó Zhōngguó ma?

Have you been to China?

4. 我可以不可以借你的車？

我可以不可以借你的车？

wǒ kěyǐ bù kěyǐ jiè nǐ de chē?

Can I borrow your car?

5. 你要不要買那件毛衣？

你要不要买那件毛衣？

nǐ yào bù yào mǎi nàjiàn máoyī?

Do you want to buy that sweater?

6. 你有沒有錢？

你有没有钱？

nǐ yǒu méiyǒu qián?

Do you have any money?

7. 你願意跟我去買東西嗎？

你愿意跟我买东西吗？

nǐ yuàn yì gān wǒ qù mǎi dōngxi ma?

Are you willing to go shopping with me?

8. 你會不會說漢語？

你会不会说汉语？

nǐ huì bù huì shuō Hànnyǔ?

Can you speak Chinese?

9. 你喜不喜歡吃冰淇淋？

你喜不喜欢吃冰淇淋？

nǐ xǐ bù xǐhuān chī bīngqínlín?

Do you like to eat ice cream?

10. 你看過那個電影沒有？

你看过那个电影没有？

nǐ kàn guó nà ge diànyǐng méi yǒu?

Have you seen that movie?

Content Questions

Content questions use the following question words and question phrases:

誰/誰 什麼/什么	shéi shémne	who what
什麼時候/什么时候	*	shémne shihou
哪兒 ? /哪儿 ?	nǎ?	where
哪裏 ? /哪里 ?	náli?	where
哪 ?	nǎ?	which
什麼地方/什么地方	shémne dìfang	where
幾/几	jǐ	how many
多少	duōshǎo	how many, how much
如何	rúhé	how
怎麼/怎么	zěnme	how
為什麼/为什么	wèi shémne	why

Content questions are answered by replacing the question word with the appropriate answer. In Mandarin, the word order of content questions and their answers is identical. The question word goes where the answer goes.

她是誰 ? 她是谁 ?	tā shì shéi? Who is she?	她是 <u>張老師</u> 。 She is <u>Professor Zhang</u> .
那是什麼 ? 那是什么 ?	nà shì shénme? <u>What is that?</u>	那是 <u>字典</u> 。 <u>That</u> is a <u>dictionary</u> .
你什麼時候吃飯 ? 你什么时候吃饭 ?	nǐ shénme shíhou chī fàn? <u>What time do you eat?</u>	我 <u>七點</u> 吃飯。 I eat at <u>7</u> .
你去哪兒 ? 你去哪儿 ?	nǐ qù nǎlǐ? <u>Where are you going?</u>	我 <u>朋友家</u> 。 I'm going to a friend's house.

* 哪兒 ? /哪兒 ? nǎr? and 哪裏 ? /哪里 ? náli? are regional variations of the same word. They have identical meaning.

你去什麼地方 ?	我去了 <u>朋友家</u> 。
你去什麼地方 ?	我去 <u>朋友家</u> 。
你去哪兒 ?	我去了 <u>朋友家</u> 。
你去哪兒 ?	I'm going to a friend's house.
你去哪兒 ?	我去了 <u>朋友家</u> 。
你去哪兒 ?	I'm going to a friend's house.
你去哪兒 ?	我去了 <u>朋友家</u> 。
你去哪兒 ?	I'm going to a friend's house.

這個字怎麼寫 ?	這個字這樣寫。
這個字怎樣寫 ?	這個字這樣寫。
這本書多少錢 ?	這本書八塊錢。
How much money is this book ?	This book is eight dollars.
How much money is this book ?	This book is eight dollars.

If the question word is 怎麼/怎么 zěnme, the answer may be either a short phrase or a longer description of a process.

這個字怎麼寫 ?	這個字這樣寫。
這個字怎樣寫 ?	這個字這樣寫。

這本書多少錢 ?	這本書八塊錢。
這本書多少錢 ?	這本書八塊錢。
這本書多少錢 ?	這本書八塊錢。

How do you write this character ?	This character is written this way.
-----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

If the question word phrase is 做什麼/做什么 zuò shémne, the answer replaces both the verb and the object noun phrase.

你昨天晚上做了什麼 ?	我看了電影。
你昨天晚上做了什麼 ?	我看了電影。

你昨天晚上做了什麼 ?	我看了電影。
你昨天晚上做了什麼 ?	我看了電影。
你昨天晚上做了什麼 ?	我看了電影。

What did you do last night ?	I saw a movie.
------------------------------	----------------

為什麼/为什么 wèi shémne why questions are answered with an explanation. The sentence often begins with 因爲/因为 yīnwéi, see Chapter 12, Phrase and Clause Connection.)

你爲什麼學中文 ?	因為我要去中國。
你爲什麼學中文 ?	因為我要去中國。
nǐ wèi shémne xué Zhōngwén?	yīnwéi wǒ yào qù Zhōngguo.
Why do you study Mandarin?	Because I want to go to China.

The following question words, built upon the character 何 hé, are used in formal literary contexts. All occur directly before a VP.

何必	hébì	What need is there for VP?
何妨	héfáng	What is the harm in VP?
		Why not VP?
何时/何时	hé shí	When VP? VP at what time?
何故	hé gù	Why VP? VP for what reason?
何为/何为	hé wéi	What is NP?
何嘗/何尝	hécháng	It isn't the case that VP
		Why don't you try and do it (that thing)?
你何必那麽紧张？		你何必那麽紧张？
你何必那么紧张？		你何必那么紧张？
nǐ hébì nàme jǐnzhāng?		nǐ hébì nàme jǐnzhāng?
Why are you so nervous?		Why are you so nervous?
你何妨不去作那件事？		你何妨不去作那件事？
你何妨不去作那件事？		你何妨不去作那件事？
nǐ héfáng bù qù zuò nà jiàn shì?		nǐ héfáng bù qù zuò nà jiàn shì?
When will you go with me?		When will you go with me?

早知道你下午来找我，我何故上午去你那兒？
早知道你下午来找我，我何故上午去你那兒？
zǎo zhīdào nǐ xiàwǔ lái zhǎo wǒ, wǒ héngù shàngwǔ qù nà nà?
I knew you were coming to see me this afternoon. Why would I go to your place this morning?

我不明白何為滾石音樂，何為現代音樂。
我不明白何為滾石音樂，何為現代音樂。
wǒ bù míngbai héwéi gǔnlí shí yīnyuè, héwéi xiàndài yīnyuè.
I don't understand what hard rock music is and what modern music is.

我何嘗不想去中國。我就沒有錢。
我何嘗不想去中國。我就沒有錢。
wǒ hécháng bù xiǎng qù Zhōngguó. wǒ jiù méi yǒu qián.
It is not that I don't want to go to China. I just don't have the money.

Questioning a Situation

怎麽樣/怎么样 zěnmeyàng *how about it*

怎麽樣/怎么样 zěnmeyàng is used to ask a general question about a noun or noun phrase:

這本書怎麼樣？	zhè běn shù zěnmeyàng?
这本书怎么样？	zhè běn shù zěnmeyàng?
中文課怎麼樣？	zhōngwén kè zěnmeyàng?
中文课怎么样？	zhōngwén kè zěnmeyàng?

How is this book?

那個電影怎麼樣？	nà ge diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?
那个电影怎么样？	nà ge diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?
How is that movie?	How is that movie?
怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì	怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì

The negated expression indicates that there is nothing extraordinary about the noun or noun phrase.

Q: 那個電影怎麼樣？	A: 不怎麼樣。
那個電影怎么样？	不怎么样。
nà ge diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?	bù zěnmeyàng.
How is that movie?	How is that movie?
怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì	怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì

The negated expression indicates that there is nothing extraordinary about the noun or noun phrase.

Q: 那個電影怎麼樣？
A: 不怎麼樣。
那個电影怎么样？
不怎么样。
nà ge diànyǐng zěnmeyàng?
How is that movie?
怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì
怎麼(一)回事/怎麼(一)回事 zěnmē(yí) huí shì

about a situation:

這是怎麼回事？	zhè shì zěnmé huí shì?
这是怎么回事？	zhè shì zěnmé huí shì?
zhè shì zěnmē huí shì?	zhè shì zěnmē huí shì?
What's going on?	What's going on?
他不知道是怎麼回事。	他不知道是怎么回事。
tā bù zhidao shì zěnmē huí shì.	tā bù zhidao shì zěnmē huí shì.
He didn't know what was going on.	He didn't know what was going on.

* From 一無所有 / 一无所有 yīwú suǒyǒu 'Nothing to My Name' by Cui Jian, 1986.

Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are those for which the answer is obvious and for which no response is expected. In Mandarin, rhetorical expressions can be expressed using the phrase: 難道 / 难道 nándào do you mean to say that ... *

他有女朋友了。難道你不知道嗎？

他有女朋友了。难道你不知道吗？

tā yǒu nǚ péngyou le. nándào nǐ bù zhīdào ma?

He has a girlfriend now. Do you mean to say that you didn't know?

我聽說美國人都會跳舞。難道你不會嗎？

我听说美国人都会跳舞。难道你不会吗？

wǒ tīngshuō Měiguó rén dōu huì tiào wǔ. nándào nǐ bú huì ma?

I heard that all Americans can dance. Do you mean to say that you can't?

For a rhetorical response to a situation one can use the following expression:

可不是嗎？ / 可不是嗎？ kěbushíma?

Precisely, Naturally, You're telling me? You don't say?

王 : 你明天已經二十一歲了，可以喝酒了。

王 : 你明天已经二十一岁了，可以喝酒了。

Wáng: nǐ míngtiān yǐjīng èrshíyī suì le, kěyǐ hē jiǔ le.

Wang: You're 21 tomorrow. You can drink.

李 : 可不是嗎！

李 : 可不是吗！

Lǐ: kěbushíma!

Li: You're telling me?

3. Write the question for each of these answers, questioning the phrase that is in square brackets. Translate your questions into English.

1. 我是〔陳麗麗〕。

我是〔陈丽丽〕。

wǒ shì〔Chén Lílì〕.

I am Lili Chen.

2. 我每天〔七點鐘〕吃早飯。

我每天〔七点钟〕吃早饭。

wǒ mǎitiān〔qī diǎn zhōng〕chī zǎofàn.

I eat breakfast every day at 7 o'clock.

3. 我昨天買了〔兩本〕書。

我昨天买了〔两本〕书。

wǒ zuótīān mǎi le〔liǎng běn〕shū.

I bought two books yesterday.

4. 我明天跟〔朋友〕去看電影。

我明天跟〔朋友〕去看电影。

wǒ míngtiān〔gèn péngyou〕qù kàn diànyǐng.

Tomorrow I am going with friends to see a movie.

5. 我們〔坐車〕去。

我们〔坐车〕去。

wǒmen〔zuò chē〕qù.

We are going by car.

6. 電影票〔七塊五毛〕錢。

电影票〔七块五毛〕钱。

diànyǐng piào〔qī kuài wǔ máo〕qián.

Movie tickets are \$7.50.

7. 我喜歡看〔美〕國電影。

我喜欢看〔美〕国电影。

wǒ xǐhuān kàn〔Měi〕guó diànyǐng.

I like to watch American movies.

8. 我們晚上〔八點多鐘〕回家。

我们晚上〔八点多钟〕回家。

wǒmen wǎnshàng〔bā diǎn duō zhōng〕huí jiā.

We'll return home tonight after 8 p.m.

9. [我妹妹] 跟我們去。

[我妹妹] 跟我们去。

[wǒ mèimei] gēn wǒmen qù.

My younger sister is going with us.

10. 我每天晚上吃〔兩〕碗飯。

我每天晚上吃〔两〕碗饭。

wǒ mǎitiān wǎnshàng chī〔liǎng〕wǎn fàn.

Every evening I eat two bowls of rice.

11. 我姐姐〔昨天〕買了新的大衣。

我姐姐〔昨天〕买了新的大衣。

wǒ jiějie〔zuótīān〕mǎi le xīn de dàiyi.

*This expression is also included in Chapter 14: Speaker Perspective

12. 我最喜歡〔這〕件毛衣。
我最喜歡〔這〕件毛衣。
wǒ zuì xǐhuān [zhè] jiàn máoyī.
I like this sweater best.

13. 這雙鞋子是在〔意大利〕買的。
這双鞋子是在〔意大利〕买的。
zhè shuāng xiézǐ shì zài [Yìdàilí] mǎi de.
These shoes were bought in Italy.

14. 我是〔二〕月〔五〕號生的。
我是〔二〕月〔五〕号生的。
wǒ shì [èr] yuè [wǔ] hào shēng de.
I was born February 5th.

15. 這個學校一共有〔兩千五百個〕學生。
这个学校一共有〔两千五百个〕学生。
zhè ge xuéxiào yīgèng yǒu [liǎng qiān wǔ bǎi gè] xuésheng.
This school has 2,500 students altogether.

4. Complete each of these sentences with one of the following words:

如何 rúhé how?
怎樣/怎么样 zěnmeyàng how about it?
怎麼(一)回事/ zěnmé(yì) what's going on?
怎麼(一)回事 huí shì?
怎麼/怎么 zěnmé how?
為什麼/为什么 wèi shénme why?
可不/可不是嗎 kěbushíma How could it be otherwise? What do you think? Absolutely!
難道/nán dào do you mean to say that

- Q: 那家飯館的菜——？
那家饭馆的菜——？
nà jiā fānguǎn de cài —— ?
Q: How is the food in that restaurant? A: Not bad.
- 她是你大學的朋友。——你不記得她了嗎？
她是你大学的朋友。——你不记得她了吗？
tā shì nǐ dàxué de péngyou. —— nǐ bù jìde tā le ma?
Q: Is she your college friend. Do you mean to say you don't remember her?

3. Q: 你在中國吃了中國飯嗎？
你在中國吃了中国饭吗？
nǐ zài Zhōngguó chī le Zhōngguó fàn ma? —— !
Q: Did you eat Chinese food in China? A: What do you think?

4. 我——不想跟你一起去中國？
我——不想跟你一起去中国？
wǒ —— bù xiǎng gēn nǐ yǐqǐ qù Zhōngguó.
How could I not want to go with you to China?

5. Q: 美國孩子花很多錢嗎？
美国孩子花很多钱吗？
Měiguó háizi huā hěn duō qián ma?
Q: Do American kids spend a lot of money?

A: ——才上大學就要買車。
——才上大学就要买车。
—— cái shàng dàxué jiù yào mǎi chē.
A: Absolutely. They just begin to attend college and already want to buy cars.

6. 她——一天待在屋子裏都不願意出去！
她——一天待在屋子里都不愿意出去！
tā —— yī tiān dài zài wūzǐ lǐ dōu bù yuàn yì chūqù!
What's up with her? Spending all day in her room and not willing to go out!

QUESTION WORDS AS INDEFINITES

Question words may have indefinite meaning when they occur before the verb phrase and are followed by 都 dōu or 也 yě. Notice that when a question word occurs in a phrase that is the object of the verb, the entire phrase must occur before the verb.

- 都 dōu is used in affirmative sentences:
誰/誰 shéi + 都 dōu + Verb = everyone, anyone
誰都可以來。
誰都可以来。
shéi dōu kěyǐ lái.
Anyone can come.
誰都喜欢吃中國飯。
谁都喜欢吃中国饭。
shéi dōu xǐhuān chī Zhōngguó fàn.
Everyone likes to eat Chinese food.

什麼時候/什么時候 shénmé shíhòu + 都 dōu + Verb = *always, any time*

他什麼時候都在家。

他什么时候都在家。

tā shénmé shíhòu dōu zài jiā.
He is always home.

什麼/什么 shénmé + 都 dōu + Verb = *everything, anything*

弟弟什麼都吃。

弟弟什么都吃。

dìdi shénmé dōu chī.
Younger brother eats everything.

哪兒/哪儿 nǎr + 都 dōu + Verb = *everywhere, anywhere*

我哪兒都去過。

我哪儿都去过。

wǒ nǎr dōu qùguo.
I've been everywhere.

■ 也 yě is used in negative sentences.

什麼/什么 shénmé + 也 yě + Verb = *nothing/not anything*

弟弟什麼也不吃。

弟弟什么也不吃。

dìdi shénmé yě bù chī.
Younger brother eats nothing. (Younger brother doesn't eat anything.)

什麼地方/什么地方 shénmé dìfang + 也 yě + Verb = *nowhere/not anywhere*

他什麼地方也沒去過。

他什么地方也没去过。

tā shénmé dìfang yě méi qùguo.
He hasn't been anywhere.

什麼時候/什么時候 shénmé shíhòu + 也 yě + Verb = *never*

他什麼時候也不在家。

他什么时候也不在家。

tā shénmé shíhòu yě bù zài jiā.
He is never at home.

Other Words with Indefinite Meaning

幾/几 jǐ

The word 幾/jǐ is usually understood as a question word.

你有幾塊錢？

你有几块钱？

nǐ yǒu jǐ kuài qián?
How many dollars do you have?

However, when 幾/jǐ is used in an affirmative sentence, it may have an indefinite sense. Notice that it may have indefinite sense without a following 都 dōu or 也 yě.

我有幾塊錢。

我有几块钱。

wǒ yǒu jǐ kuài qián.
I have several dollars.

到處/到处 dàochù everywhere

到處/到处 dàochù everywhere is an indefinite expression which is never used as a question word. It is typically followed by 都 dōu.

北京到處都有自行車。

北京到处都有自行车。

Běijīng dàochù dōu yǒu xíngchē.
There are bicycles everywhere in Beijing.

5. Write an answer in Mandarin to each question in the following conversations using a question word in its indefinite sense.

1. Q: 你想去哪兒旅行？

你想去哪儿旅行？

nǐ xiǎng dào nǎr qù lǚxíng?
A: Anyplace is okay.

2. Q: 你什麼時候有空？

你什么时候有空？

nǐ shénmé shíhòu yǒu kòng?
A: I always have free time.

3. Q: 你喜歡喝咖啡嗎？
你喜歡喝咖啡嗎？
nǐ xǐhuān hē kāfēi ma?
A: Everyone likes to drink coffee.
4. Q: 你今天晚上要看什麼電影？
你今天晚上要看什麼電影？
nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng yào kàn shénme diànyǐng?
A: Any movie is okay.
5. Q: 你想什麼時候看電影？
你想什麼時候看電影？
nǐ xiǎng shénmé shíhòu kàn diànyǐng?
A: Anytime is okay.
6. Q: 你什麼時候有空？
你什麼時候有空？
nǐ shénmé shíhòu yǒu kòng?
A: I never have free time.
7. Q: 你認識張大偉嗎？
你認識張大偉嗎？
nǐ rènshí Zhāng Dàwěi ma?
A: Everyone knows him.
8. Q: 我們什麼時候吃冰淇淋？
我們什麼時候吃冰淇淋？
wǒmen shénmé shíhòu chī bīngqínlín?
A: Anytime is okay.
9. Q: 你喜歡在那兒做作業？
你喜歡在那兒做作業？
nǐ xǐhuān zài nǎr zuò zuòyè?
A: Any quiet place is okay. (安靜/安静 ànjìng quiet)
10. Q: 你爬得上那座山嗎？(爬山 pá shān climb a mountain)
你爬得上那座山嗎？
nǐ pádeshàng nà zuò shān ma?
A: No one can climb that mountain.

Question Words in Parallel Phrases**Question Word 就 jiù Question Word**

Parallel phrases are phrases that occur in sequence in a sentence, in which each phrase has the same grammatical structure and theme. When a question word occurs in each of the phrases of a parallel structures, it has indefinite meaning.

A: 誰想吃誰就吃。

B: 誰想吃誰就吃。

shéi xiǎng chī, shéi jiù chī.
*Whoever wants to eat, eat.*A: 你要到哪兒去就到哪兒去。
你要到哪兒去就到哪兒去。
nǐ yào dào nǎr qù jiù dào nǎr qù.
*Go wherever you want.*A: 你要吃多少就吃多少。
你要吃多少就吃多少。
nǐ yào chī duōshǎo jiù chī duōshǎo.
*Eat as much as you want.*A: 你要怎麼寫就怎麼寫。
你要怎麼寫就怎麼寫。
nǐ yào zé yào xiě jiù chī duōshǎo.
Write however you want.

6. These conversations use question words in parallel phrases. Translate them into English.

1. Q: 這件事情應該怎麼做？
這件事情應該怎麼做？
zhè jiàn shìqing yinggāi zěnmē zuò?
A: 你要怎麼做就怎麼做。
你要怎麼做就怎麼做。
nǐ yào zěnmē zuò jiù zěnmē zuò?
2. Q: 我們請誰吃飯？
我們請誰吃飯？
wǒmen qǐng shéi chī fan?

A. 你要請誰就請誰。
你要请谁就请谁。

nǐ yào qǐng shéi jiù qǐng shéi.
大概跟哥哥一块儿。哥哥到哪儿去弟弟就到哪儿去。

3. Q: 我們給母親買什麼東西？
我们给母亲买什么东西？

wǒmen gěi mǔqīn mǎi shénme dōngxi?
我要買什麼就買什麼。
你要买什么就买什么。

nǐ yào mǎi shénme jiù mǎi shénme.
A. 我們到哪兒去？
我们到哪儿去？

wǒmen dào nǎr qù?
A: 你要到哪兒去我們就到哪兒去。
你要到哪儿去我们就到哪儿去。

nǐ yào dào nǎr qù wǒmen jiù dào nǎr qù.
5. Q: 小費要給多少錢？（小費/小費 xiǎofei tip）
xiǎofei yào gěi duōshǎo qián?

A: 你要給多少就給多少。
你要给多少就给多少。

nǐ yào gěi duōshǎo jiù gěi duōshǎo.
6. 趙：這個字怎麼寫？
趙：这个字怎么写？
Zhào: zhè ge zì zěnme xiě?

王：你要怎麼寫就怎麼寫。
王：你要怎么写就怎么写。
Wáng: nǐ yào zěnme xiě jiù zěnme xiě.

趙：不行啊。每個字都有固定的筆畫！
趙：不行啊。每个字都有固定的笔画！

Zhào: bù xíng a. měi ge zì dōu yǒu gùdìng de bìhuà!
Zhao: That's not okay! Every character has a definite stroke order!

7. Q: 你弟弟在那兒？
你弟弟在哪儿？
nǐ dìdi zài nǎr?

A: 大概跟哥哥一塊兒。哥哥到哪兒去弟弟就到哪兒去。
大概跟哥哥一块儿。哥哥到哪儿去弟弟就到哪儿去。

8. Q: 你今天晚上跟誰跳舞？
你今天晚上跟谁跳舞？

nǐ jīntiān wǎnshàng gēn shéi tiào wǔ?
A: 我要跟誰跳舞就跟誰跳舞。
我要跟谁跳舞就跟谁跳舞。

wǒ yào gēn shéi tiào wǔ jiù gēn shéi tiào wǔ.

Location, Directional Movement, and Distance

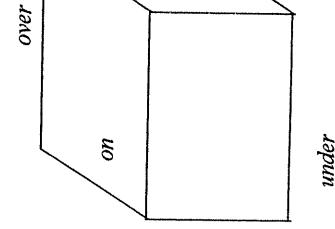
LOCATION

Location Words and Possible Suffixes

		- 里 / 里 / lǐ	- 在 / 在 / zài	- 面 / 面 / miàn	- 边 / 边 / biān	- 间 / 间 / jiān
裏 / 里	in	✓	✓	✓	✓	
外 / 外	out	✓	✓	✓	✓	
上 / 上	on, above	✓		✓		
下 / 下	under	✓		✓		
右 / 右	*right			✓		
左 / 左	*left			✓		
前 / 前	*front			✓		
後 / 后	back/behind	✓		✓		
對 / 对	*across from			✓		
旁 / 旁	*next to				✓	
中 / 中	*in between					
No Suffix:						
內 / 內	in					

Compass Directions

		- 东 / 东 / dōng	- 西 / 西 / xī	- 南 / 南 / nán	- 北 / 北 / běi
東 / 东	east	✓		✓	
南 / 南	south	✓		✓	
西 / 西	west	✓		✓	
北 / 北	north	✓		✓	



Location Phrases

Locations always assume a reference point. Here, the box is the reference point, and the location phrases describe points around the box.

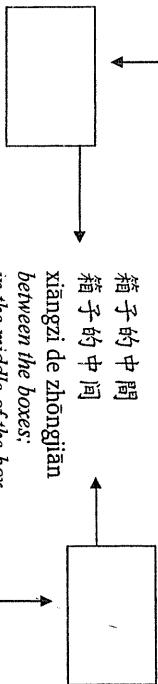
- In English, location phrases occur before the reference point: *over the box, on the box, etc.*
- In Mandarin, location phrases occur *after* the reference point, in the following pattern:

* Suffix usually occurs.

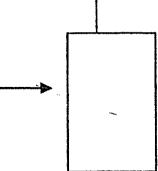
Reference Point 的 de location phrase

箱子的上頭
箱子的上头

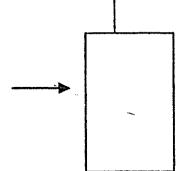
xīngzǐ de shàngtóu
over/above the box



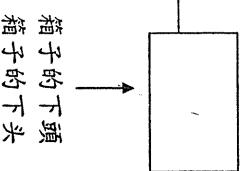
箱子的中間
箱子的中间



xīngzǐ de zhōngjiān
between the boxes;



箱子的下頭
箱子的下头



xīngzǐ de xiàtóu
under the box

Note: If the location phrase is one syllable in length, 的 de is typically omitted:

箱子裏
箱子里

xīngzǐlǐ
inside the box

Notice the difference in meaning between some Mandarin location expressions and their English counterparts:

- 上 shàng: In Mandarin, 上 shàng refers to the region above a reference point, either touching it (English *on*), or not touching it (English *above*).
- Compass directions and left-right directions: In Mandarin, there is no distinction between a location inside or outside of the reference point. The following expression in Mandarin can be used to refer either to point A or to point B.

城的北邊
chéng de běibian

A: the north side of the city OR B: outside the city in the region to the north.

■ B

■ A
the city

Location Phrases as NP Modifiers

Location phrases can serve as modifiers of NPs. When they do, they follow the same rule as all other NP modifiers: they precede the head noun. Location phrases which serve as modifiers are followed by 的 de:

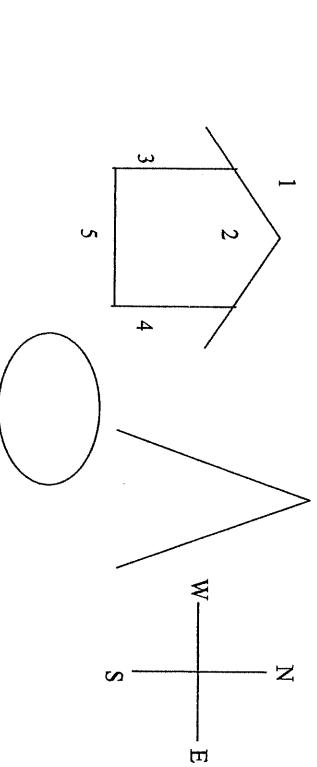
Modified NP

北邊的山
北边的山

běibìan de shān
the mountains to the north

to the north of the mountains

- Describe locations as instructed. (房子 fángzǐ house, 湖 hú lake, 山 shān mountain)



Location Phrase

山的北邊
山的北边

shān de běibìan
to the north of the mountains

the north of the mountains

- Describe the location of number 1 with respect to the house.

- Describe the location of number 2 with respect to the house.

- Describe the location of number 3 with respect to the house.

- Describe the location of number 4 with respect to the house.

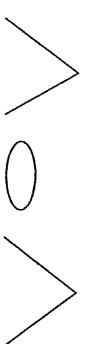
- Describe the location of number 5 with respect to the house.

- What is the compass direction of the mountain with respect to the house?

- What is the compass direction of the lake with respect to the house?

- What is the compass direction of the lake with respect to the mountain?

- Where is the lake with respect to the mountains in the picture below?



2. Translate these phrases into English. Some of these phrases describe locations, and some are nouns with locations as modifiers.

1. 右邊的人

右边的人
yòubian de rén

2. 房子的後頭

房子的后头
fángzì de hòutou

3. 中間的房子

中間的房子
zhōngjiān de fángzì

4. 房子的中間

房子的中間
fángzì de zhōngjiān

5. 西邊的湖

西邊的湖
xībian de hú

6. 公園的北邊

公園的北邊
gōngyuán de běibiān

7. 北邊的公園

北邊的公園
běibiān de gōngyuán

8. 前頭的那個女孩子

前头的那个女孩子
qiántou de nà ge nǚ háizi

9. 那個女孩子的前頭

那个女孩子的前头
nà ge nǚ háizi de qiántou

10. 學校的東邊

学校的东边
xuéxiào de dōngbian

在 zài and 有 yǒu

The verb that indicates spatial location is 在 zài: *to be located*.

弟弟在房子裏。

弟弟在房子里。

dìdì zài fángzì lǐ.

Younger brother is (located) in the house.

圖書館在大學路的北邊。

图书馆在大学路的北边。

túshūguǎn zài dàxué lù de běibiān.

The library is (located) north of College Road.

A Note on 在 zài and 是 shì

While 在 zài can be translated as *be*, it is distinct in meaning from the verb 是 shì.

be. 是 shì joins two Noun Phrases and indicates a relationship of identity between them.

(Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.) The relationship indicated by 在 zài is that of location.

在 zài

弟弟是學生。

弟弟是学生。

dìdì shì xuéshēng.

Younger brother is a student.

A Note on 在 zài and 有 yǒu

在 zài and 有 yǒu may both occur in descriptions involving location. 在 zài is a verb used to indicate the location of an object. 有 yǒu is a verb used to indicate the existence of an object. Notice the meanings they contribute in the following sentences.

(在)公園裏有湖。

(在)公园里有湖。

(zài) gōngyuán lǐ yǒu hú.

Located in the park there is a lake.

湖在公園裏。

湖在公园里。

(zài) gōngyuán lǐ yǒu hú.

The lake is located in the park.

有湖在公園裏。

有湖在公園里。

yǒu hú zài gōngyuán lǐ.

There is a lake located in the park.

Since both 有 yǒu and 在 zài are verbs, they can both be negated.

公園裏沒有湖。

gōngyuán lǐ méi yǒu hú.

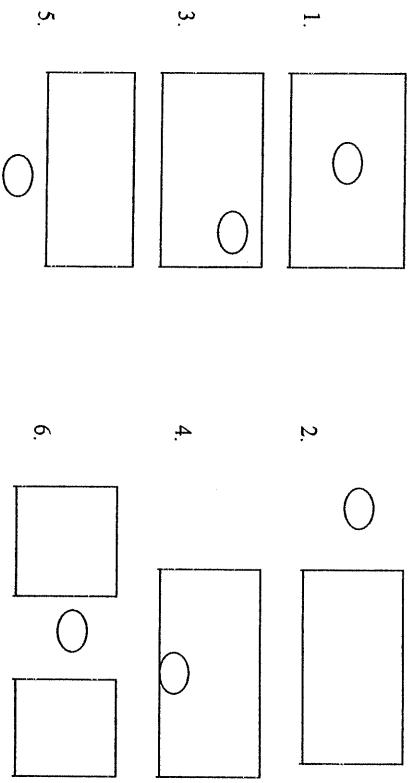
In the park there is no lake.

湖不在公園裏。

hú bù zài gōngyuán lǐ.

The lake is not in the park. (It is someplace else.)

3. In complete sentences, describe the location of the lake with respect to the park(s) in each of the following pictures. Use compass locations for 2, 3, 4, and 5.



4. Translate the following locations into English.

1. 在我的旁邊
在我的旁边

2. 在老師的左邊
在老师的左边

zài wǒ de pánghān
zài lǎoshī de zuǒbiān

3. 國外

國外

guówài

guówài

4. 那個人的右面

那個人的右面

nà ge rén de yòumàn

nà ge rén de yòumàn

5. 在你的前頭

在你的前頭

zài nǐ de qiántóu

zài nǐ de qiántóu

6. 桌子上有一本書。

桌子上有一本書。

zhuōzǐ shàng yǒu yí běn shū.

zhuōzǐ shàng yǒu yí běn shū.

7. 房子的後頭有人。

房子的后头有人。

fángzǐ hòutóu yǒu rén.

fángzǐ hòutóu yǒu rén.

8. 房子裏沒有人。

房子里沒有人。

fángzǐ lǐ méi yǒu rén.

fángzǐ lǐ méi yǒu rén.

9. 我弟弟在那兩個女孩子的中間。
我弟弟在那兩個女孩子的中間。

wǒ dìdi zài nà liǎng ge nǚ háizi de zhōngjiān.

wǒ dìdi zài nà liǎng ge nǚ háizi de zhōngjiān.

10. 圖書館在你的前頭。
圖書館在你的前头。

túshūguǎn zài nǐ de qiántóu.

túshūguǎn zài nǐ de qiántóu.

DIRECTIONAL MOVEMENT

Directional Movement Expressions

In Mandarin, directional movement is expressed as follows.

Mover+ Movement Verb+ Direction+ Reference Point+ Speaker Perspective: 来 lái or 去 qù

他	走	进	屋子	来了。
他	走	进	屋子	来了。
tā	zǒu	jìn	wūzǐ	lái le.
He	walked	into	the room	(towards the speaker).

他	走	进	屋子	去了。
他	走	进	屋子	去了。
tā	zǒu	jìn	wūzǐ	qù le.
He	walked	into	the room	(away from the speaker).

Common Directional Words

到	jin	into	dào	at (final destination of movement)
出	chū	out of		
遇/过	guò	pass/go by		
上	shàng	up		
下	<td>down</td> <td></td> <td></td>	down		
往	wǎng	towards		
回	huí	return back		

Common Movement Verbs

走	zǒu	walk
跑	pǎo	run
开/开	kāi	drive
飞/飞	fēi	fly
跳	tào	skip; jump; dance
爬	pá	climb
游	yóu	swim

Speaker Perspective: 来 lái and 去 qù

来 lái and 去 qù reflect the perspective of the speaker or addressee regarding the direction of the movement. 来 lái indicates movement towards the speaker or addressee. 去 qù indicates movement away from the speaker or addressee.

DIRECTIONAL MOVEMENT

Directional Movement Expressions

妈妈走进屋子来了。
妈妈走进屋子来了。

māma zǒu jìn wūzǐ qù le.
Mom walked into the room.

(The speaker is in the room and the direction of mom's movement is towards the speaker.)

Omission of the Reference Point

While a reference point is always implied in directional movement, the reference point itself may be omitted from the sentence:

妈妈走進來了。	②她跑出去了。
妈妈走進來了。	tā pǎo chū qu le. He ran out.

Note: Sentences with 往 wǎng and 到 dào must include a reference point:

妈妈走進來了。	②她跑到公園去了。
妈妈走進來了。	tā pǎo dào gōngyuán qù le. She ran to the park.
妈妈走進來了。	②他開往海邊去了。
妈妈走進來了。	tā kāi wǎng hǎibiān qù le. He drove towards the ocean.

Human or Animal Reference Points

Nouns, NPs, or pronouns with human or animal reference cannot serve as reference points in directional expressions unless they are followed by a specifier.

②請到我來。	②請到我來。
qǐng dào wǒ zhèr lái. Please come to me.	qǐng dào wǒ lái. Please come to me.

②她跑到李老師去了。
她跑到李老师去了。

tā pǎo dào Lǐ lǎoshī qù le.
She ran to (where) Professor Li (is).

②她跑到李老師去了。
她跑到李老师去了。

tā pǎo dào Lǐ lǎoshī qù le.
She ran to (where) Professor Li (is).

Directional Expressions as Resultative Endings

When a verb of motion is followed by a directional expression, the directional expression may function as a resultative ending, indicating the result of the movement. 将 de and 不 bù may occur between the verb of movement and the directional ending to add potential meaning. (See Chapter 7: The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes.)

山很高。你爬得上去嗎？

山很高。你爬得上去吗？

The mountain is very tall. Can you climb it?

湖太大了。我游不過去。

湖太大了。我游不过去。

The lake is too wide. I can't swim across.

5. Translate these Mandarin sentences with directional expressions into English.

1. 她爬上山去了。
tā pá shàng shān qù le.
2. 他從那個門跑出來了。
他从那个门跑出来了。
tā cóng nà ge mén pǎo chū lái le.
3. 他每天都從這邊跑上去。
他每天都从这边跑上去。
tā měitiān dōu cóng zhèbiān pǎo shàng qù.
4. 我的錢他都拿走了。
我的钱他都拿走了。
wǒ de qián tā dōu ná zǒu le.
5. 妹妹拿來了很多東西。
妹妹拿来了很多东西。
mèimeī ná lái le hěn duō dōng xi.
6. 這本書，請你拿回圖書館去。
这本书，请你拿回图书馆去。
zhè běn shū, qǐng nǐ ná huí túshūguǎn qù.

Relocation Verbs

Relocation verbs describe moving an item to a new location. The item that is relocated occurs in the sentence as the object of the verb 把 bǎ. (See Chapter 10: The 把 bǎ Construction.)

1. 妹妹把車開回家了。
妹妹把车开回家了。
mèimeī bǎ chē kāi huí jiā le.
Younger sister drove the car home.
2. 他把我的錢拿走了。
他把我的钱拿走了。
tā bǎ wǒde qián ná zǒu le.
He took my money away.

7. 他每天下午走到郵局去寄信。(郵局/邮局 yóujú post office)
他每天下午走到邮局去寄信。寄信 jì xìn mail letter)
8. 請你帶來你的漢語課本。
请你带来你的汉语课本。
qǐng nǐ dài lái nǐ de Hányǔ kèběn.

Common Relocation Verbs

開/开	kāi	<i>to drive</i>
拿	ná	<i>to bring/to take</i>
拉	lā	<i>to pull</i>
推	tui	<i>to push</i>
運/运	yùn	<i>to transport</i>
搬	bān	<i>to move</i>
帶/带	dài	<i>to bring/no take</i>
背	bēi	<i>to carry on one's back</i>
放	fàng	<i>to put/to place</i>
掉	diào	<i>to drop</i>

6. Complete these sentences in Mandarin to match the meaning of the English sentences.

Each Mandarin sentence includes a directional expression. Additional exercises using 把 bǎ and directional expressions are found in Chapter 10: The 把 bǎ Construction.

1. 她把 ____ 背 ____ 了。

tā bǎ ____ bēi ____ le.

She carried the child home on her back.

2. 我們把 ____ 搬 ____ 去了。

wǒmen bǎ ____ bān ____ qù le.

We moved the table into the room.

3. 爸爸把 ____ 放 ____ 了。

bàba bǎ ____ fàng ____ .

Dad put the newspaper on the table.

4. 誰把 ____ 掉 ____ ?

shéi bǎ ____ diào ____ ?

Who dropped the cup on the floor?

5. 我們不能把 ____ 開 ____ 去。

wǒmen bù néng bǎ ____ kāi ____ qù.

We can't drive the car into the park.

6. 我明天要把 ____ 開 ____ 去。
我把 ____ 從 ____ 來了。
我把 ____ 从 ____ 來了。
wǒ míngtiān yào bǎ ____ kāi ____ qù.
Tomorrow I want to drive the car to Mr. Wang's place.
7. 我把 ____ 从 ____ 來了。
我把 ____ 从 ____ 來了。
wǒ bǎ ____ cóng ____ lái le.
I pulled younger brother out of (out from) the water.
8. 你什麼時候把 ____ 開 ____ 來?
你什麼時候把 ____ 开 ____ 来?
nǐ shénme shíshíou bǎ ____ kāi ____ lái?
When are you driving the car to my house?
9. 我明天要把 ____ 帶 ____ 去。
我把 ____ 帶 ____ 去。
wǒ míngtiān yào bǎ ____ dài ____ qù.
Tomorrow I have to take little brother to school.
10. 車壞了！我們只好把 ____ 推 ____ 了。
車壞了！我们只好把 ____ 推 ____ 了。
chē huài le! wǒmen zhǐ hǎo bǎ ____ tuī ____ le.
The car is broken! The best thing we can do is push it home.

DISTANCE**Expressing Distance**

A	離 / 离	B	distance
	If		
A	離 / 离	B	遠/遠 ~ 近
If	yuǎn	jìn	

我家離學校三英里路(遠)。
我家离学校三英里路(远)。

wǒ jiā lì xuéxiào sān yǐng lì lù (yuǎn).
My house is 3 miles from school.

* Mandarin speakers from Taiwan tend to include 這/zé/這/zé/遠/yuǎn and not 路/lù.

我家離學校很遠。

我家离学校很远。

wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào hěn yuǎn.
My house is very far from school.

我家離學校很近。

wǒ jiā lí xuéxiào hěn jìn.
My house is very close to school.

Note: 異 / 离 *lí from* is used to indicate distance, and is never used to indicate the starting point of movement. To indicate movement from a place, use 從 *cóng from*.

從這兒到郵局怎麼走？

cóng zhèr dào yóujú zěnmē zǒu?
How do you go from here to the post office?

Negating Distance

我家離這兒不很遠。

我家离这儿不很远。

wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù hěn yuǎn.
My house is not very far from here.

wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù jìn.
My house is not close to here.

wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù jìn.
My house is not near here.

wǒ jiā lí zhèr bù jìn.
My house is not three miles from here.

To indicate a correction about a distance, use 不是 *bú shì* as follows:

錢：王老師的家離這兒三英里路。

王老师的家离这儿三英里路。

Qian: Teacher Wang's house is 3 miles from here.

毛：王老師的家離這兒不是三英里路。是三十英里路。

王老师的家离这儿不是三英里路。是三十英里路。

Wáng lǎoshi de jia lí zhèr bù sān yǐng lǐ lù. shí sānshí yǐng lǐ lù.
Mao: Teacher Wang's house is not 3 miles from here. It's 30 miles from here.

Questioning Distance

你家離這兒多遠？

你家离这儿多远？

nǐ jiā lí zhèr duō yuǎn?
How far is your house from here?

你家離這兒有幾英里路？

你家离这儿有几英里路？

nǐ jiā lí zhèr yǒu jǐ yǐng lǐ lù?
How many miles from here is your house?

你家離這兒近嗎？

你家离这儿近吗？

nǐ jiā lí zhèr jìn ma?
Is your house close to here?

你家離這兒遠嗎？/遠不遠？

nǐ jiā lí zhèr yuǎn ma?/yuǎn bù yuǎn?
Is your house far from here?

7. Answer the questions in full sentences based on the information in parentheses.

圖書館離書店多遠？
图书馆离书店多远？

túshūguǎn lí shùdiàn duō yuǎn?
How far is the library from the bookstore?

1. (20 miles)

2. (2 miles)

3. (18 miles)

4. (100 miles)

5. (6 ½ miles)

公園離你家遠嗎？
公园离你家远吗？

gōngyuán lí nǐ jiā yuǎn ma?

6. no

7. yes

8. extremely far

9. not too far

10. very close

8. Put these phrases in the correct order to make well-formed sentences. The English translations are included.

1. 法國離不遠意大利。

法國離不遠意大利。

Fǎguó lí bù yuǎn Yìdàilí.
France is not far from Italy.

2. 美國很遠離中國。

美國很遠離中國。

Měiguó hěn yuǎn lí Zhōngguó.
America is very far from China.

3. 紐約兩百英里路差不多離波士頓。

紐約兩百英里路差不多離波士頓。

Niǔyùé liǎng bǎi yǐng lǐ lù chàbùduō lí Bōshìdūn.
New York is about 200 miles from Boston.

4. 多遠澳大利亞離英國？

多遠澳大利亞離英國？

duō yuǎn Aòdàlìyá lí Yīngguó?
How far is Australia from England?

5. 加州遠離佛羅里達州嗎？

加州遠離佛羅里達州嗎？

Jiāzhōu yuǎn lí Fúluótídá zhōu ma?
Is California far from Florida?

6. 很加拿大近離美國。

很加拿大近離美國。

hěn Jiānádà jìn lí Měiguó.
Canada is very close to the U.S.

7. 墨西哥不太遠離得州。

墨西哥不太遠離得州。

Mòxīgē bù tài yuǎn lí Dézhōu.
Mexico is not too far from Texas.

8. 芝加哥不到密西根離一百英里路。

芝加哥不到密西根離一百英里路。

Zhījiāgē bù dào Mǐxīgēn lí yī bǎi yǐng lǐ lù.
Chicago isn't 100 miles from Michigan.

9. 日本離很近韓國。
日本離很近韓國。

Riběn lí hěn jìn Hánuguó.
Japan is very close to South Korea.

10. 相當遠喀麥隆巴西離。
相當遠喀麥隆巴西離。

xiāngdāng yuǎn Kāmàlóng Bāixī.
Cameroon is rather far from Brazil.

CHAPTER 10

The 把 bǎ Construction

把 bǎ occurs in the following structure:

Subject NP₁ 把 bǎ NP₂ VP

While 把 bǎ has no direct equivalent in English, sentences with 把 bǎ may be paraphrased as:

Subject NP₁, takes NP₂, and does VP with it.

The properties of the 把 bǎ construction are as follows:

- The VP following 把 bǎ + NP must describe a completed action or an action with duration. Therefore, 把 bǎ may occur with the following verbs and verb phrases:

Achievement verbs, since they refer to completed actions (see also Chapter 3):

Verbs and Verb Phrases):

我把他們的名字都忘了。真不好意思。
我把他们的名字都忘了。真不好意思。

wǒ bǎ tāmen de míngzì dōu wàng le. zhēn bù hǎo yìsi.
I forgot all of their names. How embarrassing.

他把我的書丟掉了。

他把我的書丟掉了。

tā bǎ wǒ de shù diūdiào le.
He lost my book. (He took my book and lost it.)

Activity verbs with duration emphasized or implied:

你再把這個問題想一想。
你再把这个問題想一想。

nǐ zài bǎ zhè ge wèntí xiǎng yī xiǎng.
Think about that problem for awhile.

請把你_們的作業改一改。

請把你_們的作業改一改。

qǐng bǎ nǐ de zuòyè gǎi yī gǎi.
Please correct your homework.

Activity verbs with resultative verb endings (see also Chapter 7: The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes):

弟弟把蛋糕吃完了。
dìdì bǎ dànghāo chīwán le.
Younger brother ate up the cake.

我把那個字念錯了。
wǒ bǎ nà ge zì niāncuò le.
I read that character wrong.

我把那個字念錯了。
wǒ bǎ nà ge zì niāncuò le.
I read that character wrong.

Relocation verbs with directional complements (see also Chapter 9: Location, Directional Movement, and Distance):

請把書拿出來。

請把書拿出來。

請把書拿出來。
qǐng bǎ shù náchūlái.
Please take the books out.

他把車開上山去了。

他把車開上山去了。

ta bǎ chē kāi shàng shān qù le.
He drove the car up the mountain. (He took the car and drove it up the mountain.)

In the 把 bǎ construction, NP₂ must refer to a specific object or concept. A NP may acquire a specific reference in context. The specifiers 這 zhè and 那 nà can also be used to mark a NP as specific.

我把這本書看完了。 ⑧我把書看完了。
我把這本書看完了。 我把書看完了。

wǒ bǎ zhè běn shù kànwán le. ⑧wǒ bǎ shù kànwán le.
I finished reading this book. I finished reading a book.

The verb may act on a portion of NP₂. The ‘part’ occurs after verb.

弟弟把蛋糕吃了一半。

dìdì bǎ dànghāo chī yī bàn.
Younger brother ate half the cake.

他把這本書看了幾頁。

他把這本書看了幾頁。

ta bǎ zhè běn shù kànle jǐ yè.
He read a few pages of the book.

■ 把 bǎ cannot be followed by a verb suffix.

- 我把書放在桌子上了。
我把书放在桌子上。
我把照相机借给我用。
我把照相机借给我用。
- wǒ bǎ shù fàng zài zhūzǐ shàng le.
wǒ bǎ zhàoxiàngjī jiè gěi wǒ yòng.
- 弟弟把餅乾都吃完了。
弟弟把饼干都吃完了。
弟弟把那張畫兒掛在牆上。
妈妈把那张画儿挂在墙上。
- dìdì bǎ bǐnggān dōu chīwán le.
māma bǎ nà zhāng huà guà zài qiáng shàng.
- I put the books on the table.
Wáng Míng bǎ qiǎokèlì sòng gěi tā nǚ péngyou.

1. Translate these sentences into English: 把 bǎ with a verb with completed action.

1. 他把照相機借給我用。(照相機/照相机 zhàoxiàngjī camera)
He把照相机借给我用。

tā bǎ zhàoxiàngjī jiè gěi wǒ yòng.

2. 王明把巧克力送給他女朋友。(巧克力 qiǎokèlì chocolates)
王明把巧克力送给他女友。

Wáng Míng bǎ qiǎokèlì sòng gěi tā nǚ péngyou.

3. 媽媽把那張畫兒掛在牆上。(掛 guà hang, 牆 qiáng wall)
妈妈把那张画儿挂在墙上。

māma bǎ nà zhāng huà guà zài qiáng shàng.

4. 別把杯子放在電視上面。(杯子 bēizi cup,
別把杯子放在电视上面。電視 diàntvì television)
bie bǎ bēizi fàng zài diàntvì shàngmian.

5. 我的狗把我的作業吃掉了。(狗 gǒu dog,
我的狗把我的作业吃掉了。作業/作业 zuòyè homework)
wǒ de gǒu bǎ wǒ de zuòyè chīdiào le.

6. 我把自行車擦乾淨了。(擦乾淨/擦干净 cā gānjìng wipe clean)
我把自行车擦干净了。
wǒ bǎ zìxíngchē cā gānjìng le.

7. 我弟弟把他的車碰壞了。(碰壞/碰坏 pèng huài crashed)
我弟弟把他的车碰坏了。
wǒ dìdì bǎ tā de chē pèng huài le.

8. 我把那張照片放大了。(照片 zhàopiàn photo, 放大 fàng dà enlarge)
我把那张照片放大了。
wǒ bǎ nà zhāng zhàopiàn fàng dà le.

9. 請你把門拉開。

请你把门拉开。

qǐng nǐ bǎ mén lākāi.

10. 他們不到一個小時就把行李都收拾好了。(行李 xínglì suitcase)
他们不到一个小时就把行李都收拾好了。(收拾 shōushí pack)

tāmen bú dào yí ge xiǎoshí jiù bǎ xínglì dōu shōushí hǎo le.

11. 你能不能把這件衣服洗乾淨?(洗乾淨/洗干净 xǐ gānjìng)
你能不能把这件衣服洗干净?
nǐ néng bù néng bǎ zhè jiàn yīfú xǐ gānjìng?

2. Translate these sentences into English: 把 bǎ with verbs involving movement and relocation. (See Chapter 9: Location, Directional Movement, and Distance, for a list of relocation verbs.)

1. 他把車開進公園去了。

他把车开进公园去了。

tā bǎ chē kāi jìn gōngyuán qù le.

2. 我把孩子背回家了。

我把孩子背回家了。

wǒ bǎ háizi bēi huí jiā le.

3. 學生把東西都拿到高教授家去了。

学生把东西都拿到高教授家去了。

xuésheng bǎ dōngxi dōu nǎ dào Gāo jiàoshòu jiā qù le.

4. 我得把書都還回圖書館去。(還/還 huán to return)

我把书都还回图书馆去。

wǒ děi bǎ shù dōu huán huí túshūguǎn qù.

5. 弟弟把我的車開到學校去了。

弟弟把我的车开到学校去了。

dìdì bǎ chē kāi dào xuéxiào qù le.

6. 你要把東西運到哪兒去?

你要把东西运到哪儿去?

nǐ yào bǎ dōngxi yùn dào nǎr qù?

請把書架搬到書房裏去。

请把书架搬到书房里去。

qǐng bǎ shùjià bān dào shùfáng lǐ qù.

8. 請你們把書帶來。
請你们把书带来。

qǐng nǐmen bǎ shū dài lái.

9. 請把狗拉到外頭去。
请把狗拉到外头去。

qǐng bǎ gǒu lá dào wàitóu qù.

10. 請把我的字典拿來。
请把我的字典拿来。

qǐng bǎ wǒ de zìdiǎn ná lái.

11. 她把男朋友推到門外面去了。
她把男朋友推到门外面去了。

tā bǎ nán péngy友 tuī dào mén wài miàn qù le.

3. What did they do with their Chinese book? Translate each person's explanation into a complete Chinese sentence. Use 把 bǎ in each sentence.

1. 妹妹 mèimei: *I took the book home.*
2. 媽媽 māma: *I read half.*
3. 姐姐 jiějie: *I finished reading it.*
4. 哥哥 gēge: *I loaned it to my younger brother.*
5. 弟弟 dìdì: *I lost it.*

MORE THAN

比 bǐ more than

NP₁ 比 bǐ NP₂ SV^{*}
NP₁ is more SV than NP₂

汽水比茶貴。
汽水比茶贵。

qǐshuǐ bǐ chá guì.

Soda is more expensive than tea.
写字比說話難。
写字比说话难。

xíe zì bǐ shuō huà nán.

Writing is harder than speaking.
做得對比做得快還要好。
做得对比做得快还要好。

zuòde duì bì zuòde kuài hái yào hǎo.

Doing it correctly is even better than doing it fast.

Modification of 比 bǐ comparisons

- SV —點/—點 SV yídiǎn a little more SV

哥哥比弟弟高一點。
哥哥比弟弟高一点。

gēge bǐ dìdì gāo yídiǎn.

Older brother is a little taller than younger brother.

*Comparison structures compare NPs. Notice that verbs and verb + object sequences may also function as NPs. Linguists say that these verb constructions are 'nominalized' when they function in this way.

■ SV 得多 SV de duō a lot more SV

哥哥比弟弟高得多。

gēge bǐ dìdi gāo de duō.

Older brother is a lot taller than younger brother.

- Using the 比 bǐ comparison structure, compare "A" and "B" with respect to the property "C" in complete sentences.

A	B	C
1. 中文 Zhōngwén Chinese	英文 Yīngwén English	難/難 nán difficult
2. 饺子/饺子 jiǎozi dumplings	比薩 bǐsà	好/好吃 hǎo chī good to eat
3. 文學/文学 wénxué literature	數學/数学 shùxué math	有意思 yǒu yìsì interesting
4. 妹妹 mèimei younger sister	弟弟 dìdi younger brother	用功 yònggōng hardworking
5. 孩子 háizi children	大人 dàren adults	多 duō more

■ SV 比 even more SV

更 gèng is an intensifier and goes directly before a SV. It compares a NP with another NP which has been mentioned in the discourse.

哥哥比弟弟高。

gēge bǐ dìdi gāo.

Older brother is taller than younger brother.

可樂比茶貴。

kělè bǐ chá guì.

Cola is more expensive than tea.

■ 最 zuì SV most SV

最 zuì is an intensifier and immediately precedes a SV. It is the marker of 'superlative' comparison in Mandarin.

哥哥最高。

gēge zuì gāo.

Older brother is the tallest.

可樂最貴。

kělè zuì guì.

Cola is the most expensive.

最好不過了/最好不過了 zuì hǎo bùguò le nothing is better than that

馬老師：我們今天出去吃飯，好嗎？

馬老师：我们今天出去吃饭，好吗？

Mǎ lǎoshī: wǒmen jūntiān chū qù chī fàn, hǎo ma?

Teacher Ma: Today we'll eat out, okay?

羅老師：最好不過了。

罗老师：最好不过了。

Luó lǎoshī: zuì hǎo bùguò le.

Teacher Luo: Nothing is better than that.

- Add 比 bǐ, 更 gèng, or 最 zuì to make sentences from each group of words to best match the English translations.

1. 貓，狗，小。老鼠，小。

貓，狗，小。老鼠，小。

māo, gǒu, xiǎo. lǎoshǔ, xiǎo.

Cats are smaller than dogs. Mice are even smaller.

2. 摩托車，自行車，貴。車子，貴。

摩托车，自行车，贵。车子，贵。

mótúochē, zìxíngchē, guì. chēzi, guì.

Motorcycles are more expensive than bicycles. Cars are even more expensive.

礦泉水更貴。

矿泉水更贵。

kuàngquán shuǐ gèng guì.

Mineral water is even more expensive.

3. 餅乾，水果，甜。巧克力，甜。

饼干，水果，甜。巧克力，甜。

bǐnggān, shuǐguǒ, tián. qiǎokèlì, tián.

Cookies are sweeter than fruit. Chocolate is even sweeter.

4. 姐姐，妹妹，高。哥哥，高。爸爸，高。

jiějie, mèimei, gāo. gēge, gāo. bàba, gāo.

Older sister is taller than younger sister. Older brother is even taller. Dad is the tallest.

5. 她是我校 — 聰明的學生。

她是我校 — 聰明的学生。

tā shì wǒ xiào — cōngming de xuésheng.
She is the smartest student in my school.

6. 她是我 — 好的朋友。

tā shì wǒ — hǎo de péngyou
She is my best friend.

LESS THAN

沒有 méi yǒu *not as much as*

NP₁ 沒有 NP₂, SV

NP₁ is not as SV as NP₂

茶沒有可樂貴。

chá méi yǒu kělè guì.
Tea is not as expensive as soda.

說話沒有寫字難。

说话没有写字难。

shuō huà méi yǒu xiě zì nán.
Speaking is not as hard as writing.

Modification of 沒有 méi yǒu comparisons

■ 那麼/那麼 name + SV or 這麼/這么 zhème + SV

那麼(高)/那麼(高) name gāo *that (tall)*

這麼(高)/這麼(高) zhème gāo *this (tall)*

那麼/那麼 name and 這麼/這麼 often need not be translated into English.

茶沒有可樂那麼貴。

茶沒有可乐那么贵。
chá méi yǒu kělè zhème guì.
Tea is not as expensive as cola.

我没有你那麼聰明。

我沒有你那么聪明。

wǒ méi yǒu nǐ nàme cōngming.
I am not as smart as you.

不如 bùrú *not equal to*

不如 bùrú is used in formal written or spoken discourse as follows:

NP₁ 不如 bùrú NP₂

NP₁ is not equal to NP₂

說不如做。

说不如做。

shuō bùrú zuò.

Speaking is not as good as doing.

NP₁ 不如 bùrú NP₂, SV

NP₁ is not equal to NP₂ (*in terms of the SV*)

我不如他聰明。

我不如他聪明。

我不如他聰明。

wǒ bùrú tā cōngming.
I am not as smart as he is.

與其/與其 VP₁ 不如 VP₂ yǔqí VP₁, bùrú VP₂

VP₁ is not as good as VP₂

與其學日文不如學中文。

与其学日文不如学中文。

yǔqí xué Rìwén bùrú xué Zhōngwén.
Studying Japanese is not as good as studying Chinese.

3. Convert the following 比 bǐ comparisons to 沒有 méi yǒu comparisons keeping the meaning constant, following the example.

Example

他比我聰明。 → 我沒有他那麼聰明。

他比我聰明。 → 我沒有他那么聪明。

ta bǐ wǒ cōngming.
He is smarter than I am. I am not as smart as he is.

1. 姐姐比弟弟高。

jiějie bǐ dìdi gāo.
Older sister is taller than younger brother.

2. 我上午比下午忙。
wǒ shàngwǔ bǐ xiàwǔ máng.
I am busier in the morning than in the afternoon.
3. 西瓜比南瓜甜。
xīguā bǐ nánguā tián.
Watermelon is sweeter than pumpkin.
4. 俄国比德国冷。
Èguó bǐ Déguó lěng.
Russia is colder than Germany.

5. 太平洋比大西洋大。
Tàipíngyáng bǐ Dàxiáiyáng dà.
The Pacific Ocean is bigger than the Atlantic Ocean.
6. 我的猫比我的狗还懒。
wǒ de māo bǐ wǒde gǒu hái lǎn.
My cat is even lazier than my dog.

6. 我的猫比我的狗还懒。

我的猫比我的狗还懒。

wǒ de māo bǐ wǒde gǒu hái lǎn.

My cat is even lazier than my dog.

EQUAL TO

Comparisons with 一樣 / 一样 yìyàng the same

NP₁ 跟/和 NP₂ 一樣 / 一样 *.

NP₁ gēn/hé NP₂ yìyàng

NP₁ and NP₂ are the same

這本書跟那本書一樣。

这本书跟那本书一样。

zhè běn shù gēn nà běn shù yìyàng.

This book and that book are the same.

NP₁ 跟/和 NP₂ 一樣 / 一样 SV

NP₁ gēn/hé NP₂ yìyàng SV

NP₁ and NP₂ are equally SV

可樂跟茶一樣貴。

kèlè gēn chá yìyàng guì.

Cola and tea are equally expensive.

說話和寫字一樣難。

说话和写字一样难。

shuō huà hé xiě zì yìyàng nán.

Speaking and writing are equally difficult.

好 比 般 的 bān de ... the same

NP₁ 像 NP₂ 般的 SV

NP₁ rú NP₂, bān de SV

NP₁ has the same SV quality as NP₂

湖裏的水如鏡子般的清。

湖里的水如镜子般的清。

hú lǐ de shuǐ rú jìngzi bān de qīng.

The water in the lake is as clear as a mirror.

(好)像(hǎo)xiàng...似的 sì de to be like

NP₁ (好)像 NP₂ 似的

NP₁ (hǎo)xiàng NP₂, sì de

NP₁ is like NP₂,

她好像很累似的。

tā hǎoxiàng hěn lèi sìde.

She seems very tired.

NOT EQUAL TO

Comparisons with 不一樣 / 不一样 bù yìyàng not the same

NP₁ 跟 和 NP₂ 不一樣 / 不一样 bù yìyàng

NP₁ and NP₂ are not the same

饅頭跟麪包不一樣。

馒头跟面包不一样。

mántóu gēn miànbiāo bù yìyàng.

Seamed buns and bread are not the same.

綁球和羽毛球不一樣。

网球和羽毛球不一样。

wǎngqiú hé yóumáiqiú bù yìyàng.

Tennis and badminton are not the same.

NP₁ 跟 / 和 NP₂ 不一樣 / 不一样 bù yìyàng SV

NP₁ and NP₂ are not the same SV

* In 一樣 / 一样 yìyàng structures, 跟 gēn and 跟 hé, are the most commonly used connecting words, but 跟 xiàng and 同 tóng sometimes occur.

美國車的價錢跟日本車的價錢不一樣貴。
美国车的价钱跟日本车的价钱不一样贵。

Měiguó chē de jiàqián gēn Rìběn chē de jiàqián bù yíyàng guì.
American cars and Japanese cars are not equally expensive.

紅燒豆腐和家常豆腐不一樣辣。
红烧豆腐和家常豆腐不一样辣。

hóngshāo dòufu hé jiācháng dòufu bù yíyàng là.
Red cooked beancurd and home style beancurd are not equally spicy.

不等於/不等于 bù děngyú not equivalent to

媽媽，爸爸不給你錢不等於他們不愛你。
妈妈，爸爸不给你钱不等于他们不爱你。

māma, bàba bù gěi nǐ qián bù děngyú tāmen bù ài nǐ.
Mom and dad not giving you money doesn't mean they don't love you.

他很瘦不等於他身體不好。
他很瘦不等于他身体不好。

tā hěn shòu bù děngyú tā shíntǐ bù hǎo.
His being thin doesn't mean that he is not healthy.

4. Use the parenthesized patterns to compare each of the following noun phrases with respect to the specified property.

1. 這件毛衣，那件毛衣，貴 (一樣)

这件毛衣，那件毛衣，貴 (一样)

zhè jiàn máoyī, nà jiàn máoyī, guì (yíyàng)
This sweater and that sweater are equally expensive.

2. 男孩子，女孩子，聰明 (一樣)

男孩子，女孩子，聰明 (一样)

nán háizi, nǚháizi, cōngming (yíyàng)
Boys and girls are equally smart.

3. 小狗，小貓，可愛 (一樣)

小狗，小猫，可爱 (一样)

xiǎogǒu, xiǎomāo, kěài (yíyàng)
Puppies and kittens are equally cute.

4. 電腦，計算機，有用 (不一樣)

电脑，计算机，有用 (不一样)

diànnǎo, jūsuànjī, yǒuyòng (bù yíyàng)
Computers and calculators are not equally useful.

5. 朋友，家裏人 (不一樣)
朋友，家里人 (不一样)

péngyou, jiālǐ rén (bù yíyàng)
Friends and family are not the same.

6. 叉子，筷子，方便 (一樣)
叉子，筷子，方便 (一样)

chāzi, kuàizi, fāngbiàn (yíyàng)
Forks and chopsticks are equally convenient.

7. 高跟鞋，球鞋，舒服 (不一樣)
高跟鞋，球鞋，舒服 (不一样)

gāogēngxié, qiúxié, shūfù (bù yíyàng)
High heeled shoes and sneakers are not equally comfortable.

8. 飛盤，足球，好玩 (一樣)
飞盘，足球，好玩 (一样)

feipán, zúqíju, hàowán (yíyàng)
Frisbee and soccer are equally fun.

9. 萬里長城，埃及的金字塔，有名 (一樣)
万里长城，埃及的金字塔，有名 (一样)

Wàn lǐ Chángchéng, Èjí de jīnzhítǎ, yǒumíng (yíyàng)
The Great Wall and Egypt's pyramids are equally famous.

10. 法語，漢語，難 (不一樣)
法语，汉语，难 (不一样)

Fǎyǔ, Hányǔ, nán (bù yíyàng)
French and Chinese are not equally difficult.

INCLUDING THE ACTIVITY IN THE COMPARISON

Comparison sentences may also include the activity verb for which two NPs are compared. When the activity verb is included, the verb is followed by 得 de, and Verb + 得 de occur either right before the stative verb or right before the comparison word.

比 bǐ Comparisons

Verb + 得 de occurs right before the stative verb:

哥哥比弟弟說得快。
哥哥比弟弟说得快。

哥哥比弟弟說得快。
Older brother speaks faster than younger brother.

Verb + 得 de occurs right before the comparison word.

哥哥說得比弟弟快。

哥哥说得比弟弟快。

gēge shuō de bǐ dìdi kuài.
Older brother speaks faster than younger brother.

If the object of the action verb is also included in the sentence, verb + object must precede verb + 得 de. (For more on this kind of modification, see Chapter 3: Verbs and Verb Phrases.)

NP₁ 比 NP₂ Verb + Object Verb 得 Stative Verb

哥哥比弟弟說話說得快。

哥哥比弟弟说话说得快。

gēge bǐ dìdi shuō huà shuō de kuài.
Older brother speaks faster than younger brother.

NP₁ Verb + Object Verb 得 比 NP₂ Stative Verb

哥哥說話說得比弟弟快。

哥哥说话说得比弟弟快。

gēge shuō huà shuō de bǐ dìdi kuài.
Older brother speaks faster than younger brother.

沒有 méiyǒu Comparisons

NP₁ 没有 NP₂ Verb + Object Verb 得 (那麼/那麼) Stative Verb

弟弟沒有哥哥說話說得(那麼)快。

弟弟没有哥哥说话说得(那么)快。

dìdi méiyǒu gēge shuō huà shuō de (nàme) kuài.
Younger brother doesn't speak as fast as older brother.

NP₁ Verb + Object Verb 得 没有 NP₂ Stative Verb

弟弟說話說得沒有哥哥(那麼)快。

弟弟说话说得没有哥哥(那么)快。

dìdi shuō huà shuō de méiyǒu gēge (nàme) kuài.
Younger brother doesn't speak as fast as older brother.

一樣/yìyàng Comparisons

NP₁ 跟/和 NP₂ Verb + Object Verb 得 一樣/yìyàng Stative Verb

弟弟跟哥哥說話說得一樣快。
弟弟跟哥哥说话说得一样快。

dìdi gēng gēge shuō huà shuō de yìyàng kuài.
Younger brother speaks as fast as older brother.

NP₁ Verb + Object Verb 得 跟/和 NP₂ 一樣/yìyàng Stative Verb

弟弟說話說得和哥哥一樣快。
弟弟说话说得和哥哥一样快。

dìdi shuō huà shuō de hé gēge yìyàng kuài.
Younger brother speaks as fast as older brother.

5. A. In full sentences, compare 弟弟 dìdi and 妹妹 mèimei with respect to each of the following properties. Use the comparison structure in parenthesis following each property.

弟弟	妹妹	哥哥
dìdi	mèimei	gēge
more	less	even more
faster	slower	
taller	shorter	even taller
slower	faster	even faster
the same	the same	
more	less	even more
the same	the same	

- B. In four complete sentences each using the word 更 gèng, describe the four qualities in which older brother surpasses younger sister and younger brother.

9. 10. 11. 12.

6. Answer each question using 沒有 méiyǒu as in the following example. Translate your answer into English.

Q: 弟弟跟妹妹一樣高嗎？	A: 不。弟弟沒有妹妹那麼高。
弟弟跟妹妹一样高吗？	不。弟弟没有妹妹那么高。
dìdi gēng mèimei yìyàng gāo ma?	bù, dìdi méiyǒu mèimei nàme gāo.
Q: Are younger brother and younger sister equally tall?	A: No. Younger brother is not as tall as younger sister.

1. 巧克力和红豆一样好吃嗎？

巧克力和红豆一样好吃吗？

qiǎokèlì hé hóngdòu yǐyàng hǎo chī ma?

Are chocolate and red beans equally delicious?

2. 老师跟学生一样忙嗎？

老师跟学生一样忙吗？

lǎoshī gēn xuésheng yǐyàng máng ma?

Are teachers and students equally busy?

3. 自行车和摩托车一样快嗎？

自行车和摩托车一样快吗？

zhíxíngchē hé mótuō chē yǐyàng kuài ma?

Are bicycles and motorcycles equally fast?

4. 太极拳跟空手道一样难嗎？

太极拳跟空手道一样难吗？

tàijíquán gēn kōngshǒudào yǐyàng nán ma?

Are taijiquan and karate equally difficult?

5. 金子和银子一样漂亮嗎？

金子和银子一样漂亮吗？

jīnzi hé yínzi yǐyàng piàoliang ma?

Are gold and silver equally beautiful?

6. 手機和電腦一樣有用嗎？

手机和电脑一样有用吗？

shǒujī hé diànnǎo yǐyàng yòngyòng ma?

Are cell phones and computers equally useful?

7. 狗像馬一樣快嗎？

狗像马一样快吗？

gǒu xiàng mǎ yǐyàng kuài ma?

Are dogs and horses equally fast?

8. 廣東菜和四川菜一樣辣嗎？

广东菜和四川菜一样辣吗？

Guāngdōng cài hé Sichuān cài yǐyàng là ma?

Are Cantonese food and Sichuan food equally hot and spicy?

9. 日本跟中國一樣大嗎？

日本跟中国一样大吗？

Riběn gēn Zhōngguó yǐyàng dà ma?

Are Japan and China equally big?

10. 冬天跟春天一樣美嗎？

冬天跟春天一样美吗？

dōngtiān gēn chūntiān yǐyàng měi ma?

Are winter and spring equally pretty?

7. Complete these sentences in Mandarin to match the English translations.

1. 中國人，美國人，喝茶，多

Zhōngguó rén, Měiguó rén, hē chá, duō

Chinese people drink more tea than American people.

2. 我姐姐，寫字，我，漂亮

wǒ jiějie, xiě zì, wǒ, piàoliang

My older sister writes characters prettier than I do.

3. 我，我哥哥，玩飛盤，多

wǒ, wǒ gēge, wán fēipán, duō

I don't play frisbee as much as my older brother.

4. 媽媽，做菜，爸爸，好

māma, zuò cài, baba, hǎo

Mom cooks better than dad.

5. 哥哥，爸爸，唱歌，好

gēge, bàba, chàng gē, hǎo

Older brother sings as well as dad.

6. 我的馬，跑，別的馬，快

wǒ de mǎ, pǎo, bié de mǎ, kuài

My horse runs faster than other horses.

CHAPTER 12

Phrase and Clause Connection

Phrases and clauses which occur in sequence are often related in particular ways: in terms of temporal sequence, contrast, cause-and-effect, etc. This chapter presents the Mandarin connecting words that are commonly used to indicate phrase and clause relationships.

IMPORTANT FEATURES OF PHRASE AND CLAUSE CONNECTION

- Mandarin has a strong *narrative presupposition*: the order of events or situations in the discourse typically follows the order of events or situations in the real world.

Connecting words are not used as frequently as they are in English. Often, the relationship between phrases or clauses that occur in sequence are implied rather than specified with a connecting word. The context of the sentence usually provides the information needed to interpret the relationship between the phrases or clauses.

- Mandarin connecting words often occur in pairs, in which one word may occur in each of the connected phrases or clauses. Since connecting words are optional, one or both of the connecting words may be absent. Examples of paired connectives include:

雖然 / 虽然 ... 可是	<i>suīrán ... kěshì</i>	<i>although ... but</i>
因為 / 因为 ... 所以	<i>yīnwéi ... suǒyǐ</i>	<i>because ... therefore</i>
要是 ... 就	<i>yàoshi ... jiù</i>	<i>if ... then</i>
不但 ... 而且	<i>bùdàn ... érqiè</i>	<i>not only ... but also</i>

- In Mandarin, the order of clauses linked by connecting words is generally fixed: the 虽然 / 虽 然 *suīrán* clause must occur before the 可是 *kěshì* clause, the 因為 / 因 为 *yīnwéi* clause must occur before the 所以 *suǒyǐ* clause, etc. As the two English sentences below illustrate, the relative position of English clauses linked by connecting words is relatively free.

Because I got up late I didn't eat breakfast. = I didn't eat breakfast because I got up late.

弟弟喜歡聽音樂，也喜歡打球。
兄弟喜欢听音乐，也喜欢打球。
dìdì xǐhuān tīng yīnyuè, yě xǐhuān dǎ qiú.
Little brother likes to listen to music and also likes to play ball.

ADDITION

Words that Link Nouns or Noun Phrases

跟 gēn, 和 hé, 同 tóng, and 鑑 / 与 yǔ

All of these connecting words translate as *and* in English, and all connect NPs. 跟 *gēn* and 和 *hé*, are by far the most commonly used of these connectors. 同 *tóng* is more common in southern China, and 鑑 / 与 *yǔ* occurs in formal, literary language.

弟弟和妹妹都喜歡吃甜的東西。

弟弟和妹妹都喜欢吃甜的东西。

ddì hé mèimèi dōu xǐhuān chī tián de dōngxi.

Younger brother and younger sister both like to eat sweet things.

我跟他已經認識了很久。

我跟他已经认识了很久。

wǒ gēn tā yǐjǐng rěnshí le hěn jiǔ.

He and I have already known each other for a long time.

我每天早上喝咖啡和果汁。

wǒ měitiān zǎoshàng hē kāfēi hé guǒzhī.

Every morning I drink coffee and fruit juice.

我看過《茶與同情》那個電影。

我看过《茶与同情》那个电影。

wǒ kànqùo "Chá yǔ Tíngqíng," nà ge diànyǐng.

I've seen that movie "Tea and Sympathy."

Note: 跟 *gēn*, 和 *hé*, 同 *tóng* and 鑑 / 与 *yǔ* do not link verbs or VPs.

②媽媽收拾房子和做菜。

妈妈收拾房子和做菜。

māma shōushí fángzi hé zuò cài.

Mom straightens up the house and cooks.

Words that Link Verb Phrases

也 yě also

弟弟喜歡聽音樂，也喜歡打球。
兄弟喜欢听音乐，也喜欢打球。
dìdì xǐhuān tīng yīnyuè, yě xǐhuān dǎ qiú.
Little brother likes to listen to music and also likes to play ball.

* See Chapter 4: Adverbs, for additional discussion of 也, や and 還/还 hái.

還/还 hái in addition, still

弟弟已經吃了二十個餃子，還想多吃一些。

弟弟已經吃了二十个饺子，还想多吃一些。

dìdi yǐjīng chíle èrsì ge jiǎozi, hái xiǎng duō chī yǐ xiè.

Little brother has already eaten 20 dumplings and still wants to eat more.

Note: 還沒有/还没有 hái méi yǒu means 'not yet'

另外 lìngwài in addition

妹妹買了一雙鞋子，另外還買了一雙襪子。

妹妹买了一双鞋子，另外还买了一双袜子。

mèimei mǎi le yǐshuāng xiézǐ, lìngwài hái mǎi le yǐshuāng wàzǐ.

Little sister bought a pair of shoes, and in addition bought a pair of socks.

弟弟吃了飯，另外還吃了麵包。

弟弟吃了饭，另外还吃了面包。

dìdi chīle fàn, lìngwài hái chíle miànbāo.

Younger brother ate rice and in addition also ate bread.

而 ér and/but

而 ér is a literary expression used to connect VPs related in terms of addition or contrast.

這個東西物美而價廉。

这个东西物美而价廉。

zhè ge dōngxi wù měi ér jià lián.

(As for) this item, it is attractive and the price is cheap.

這個東西貴而不實用。

这个东西贵而不实用。

zhè ge dōngxi guì ér bù shíyòng.

This item is expensive and impractical.

Paired Connecting Words that Link VPs也 ... 也 ... yě ... yě ... both ... and ...

他們每天晚上也唱歌也跳舞。

他们每天晚上也唱歌也跳舞。

tāmen méitiān wǎnshàng yě chàng gē yě tiào wǔ.

Every night they sing and dance.

又 ... 又 ... yòu ... yòu ... both ... and ...

他又高又壯。

他又高又壮。

tā yòu gāo yòu zhuàng.

He is both tall and strong.

一邊/一边 ... 一邊/一边 ... yíbiān ... yíbiān ...on the one hand ... on the other hand ... (both ... and ...)

他一邊寫字一邊聽音樂。

他一边写字一边听音乐。

tā yíbiān xiě zì, yíbiān tīng yīnyuè.

He's writing and listening to music.

不但 ... 而且 ... bùdàn ... érqìe ... not only ... but also ...

那個學生不但很聰明而且很用功。

那个学生不但很聪明而且很用功。

dà ge xuésheng bùdàn hěn cōngming érqìe hěn yònggōng.

That student is not only very smart but is also very hardworking.

她不但漂亮而且很和氣。

她不但漂亮而且很和气。

tā bùdàn piàoliang érqìe hěn héqì.

She's not only pretty, she's also very nice.

不僅/不仅 ... 而且 ... bù jǐn ... ér qìe ... not only ... but also ...

他不僅聰明而且用功。

他不仅聪明而且用功。

tā bùjǐn cōngming érqìe yònggōng.

He is not only smart, he's also hardworking.

既 ... 又 ... jì ... yòu ... both ... and ...

春天既漂亮又舒服。

chūntiān jì piàoliang yòu shūfù.

Springtime is both beautiful and comfortable.

DISJUNCTION**Words That Link Verb Phrases**

還是/还是 háishì or

- 還是/还是 háishì is used in questions that ask the listener to choose between two alternatives.

你坐火車去還是坐飛機去？
nǐ zuò huochē qù háishì zuò fēijī qù?

Are you going by train or by plane?

- 是 shì may occur before the first of two linked VPs.

是喝茶好還是喝水好？
shì hē chá hǎo hé shuǐ hǎo ?

Is it good to drink tea or is it good to drink water? (i.e. which is better?)

When the main verb of the verb phrase is 是 shì, it may be omitted from the second verb phrase so that 還是/还是 háishì occurs directly before the NP:

他是大學生還是中學生？
tā shì dàxuéshēng háishì zhōngxuéshēng?

Is he a college student or a high school student?

When answering a 還是/还是 háishì question that asks about preference or opinion, it is possible to include 還是/还是 háishì before the selected alternative:

還是喝水好。
háishì hē shuǐ hǎo.

It is better to drink water.

或者 huòzhě

- 或者 huòzhě is used in declarative sentences to indicate two alternatives, both of which are possible or acceptable.

看电影或者聽音樂都好。
kàn diànyǐng huòzhě tīng yīnyuè dōu hǎo.

看电影或者听音乐都好。
Watching a movie or listening to music is okay.

找工作，去上海或者去北京都行。

找工作，去上海或者去北京都行。

zhǎo gōngzuò, qù Shànghǎi huòzhě qù Běijīng dōu xíng.

To find a job, going to Shanghai or Beijing is okay.

- 她今天來或者明天來。

她今天來或者明天來。

tā jīntiān lái huòzhě míngtiān lái.

She is coming today or tomorrow.

Words That Link Noun Phrases

不是 ... 就是 ... búshì ... jiù shì ... if not ... then ...

每天都有人来找我。不是小王就是小李。

每天都有人来找我。不是小王就是小李。

měitiān dōu yǒu rén lái zhǎo wǒ. bùshì xiǎo Wáng jiù shì xiǎo Lǐ.

Every day someone comes looking for me. If it isn't little Wang it's little Li.

- Fill in the blanks in the story with the appropriate connecting words where possible to convey addition (and connection) or disjunction (or connection). Sometimes more than one choice is acceptable. Some blanks must be kept empty. An English translation is provided for each sentence.

1. 城西邊有一所房子。房子 ____ 大 ____ 老。沒有人住。

城西邊有一所房子。房子 ____ 大 ____ 老。沒有人住。

tā shì dàxuéshēng háishì zhōngxuéshēng?
There is a house on the west side of town. The house is big and old. No one lives there.

2. 有人說房子裏有鬼。____ 說如果你要跟鬼做朋友，你得拿飯進去 ____ 給鬼吃。

有人说房子里面有鬼。____ 說如果你要跟鬼做朋友，你得拿饭进去 ____ 给鬼吃。

yǒu rén shuō fángzì lǐ yǒu guǐ. ____ shuō rúguǒ nǐ yào gēn guǐ zuò péngyou, nǐ děi ná fan jīnqū ____ gěi guǐ chī.

Some people say there are ghosts in the house. And they say that if you want to be friends with the ghosts, you have to take food inside and give it to the ghosts to eat.

3. 妹妹 ____ 我都聽說了這個故事，____ 想要看看鬼。

妹妹 ____ 我都听说了这个故事，____ 想要看看鬼。

mèimeimei ____ wǒ dōu tīngshuō le zhè ge gǔshì, ____ xiǎng yào kàn kàn guǐ.
Younger sister and I heard this story and wanted to see the ghosts.

4. 我們問媽媽「鬼喜歡吃什麼？」她說他們喜歡吃米飯，——喜歡吃餃子——豆腐。

我們問媽媽「鬼喜歡吃什麼？」她说他们喜欢吃饭，——喜欢饺子——豆腐。

wǒmen wen māma "guǐ xǐhuān chǐ shénme?" tā shuō tāmen xǐhuān chí mǎ fan, —— xǐhuān chí jiǎozi —— dòufu.
We asked Mom "what do ghosts like to eat?" Mom said they eat rice, and they eat jiaozi (dumplings), and they eat döufu (beancurd).

5. 他們——喜歡吃麵，——喜歡喝酒——可樂。

他們——喜欢吃面，——喜欢喝酒——可乐。

tāmen —— xǐhuān chí miàn, —— xǐhuān hé jiǔ —— kělè.
They also like to eat noodles, and they like to drink wine, and they like to drink cola.

6. 所以我們做了紅燒豆腐，——包了很多餃子。

所以我們做了红烧豆腐，——包了很多饺子。

suóyǐ wǒmen zuò le hóngshāo dòufu, —— bāo le hěn duō jiǎozi.
So we made red-cooked beancurd and wrapped a lot of jiaozi.

7. ——我們——買了酒——可樂。

——我们——买了酒——可乐。

— wǒmen —— mǎi le jiǔ —— kělè.
And we bought wine and cola.

8. 等到天黑了，我們——到那所房子去了。

等到天黑了，我们——到那所房子去了。

děng dào tiān hēi le, wǒmen —— dào nà suǒ fángzì qù le.
We waited until the day turned dark and we went to that house.

9. 進了房子，——妹妹就問「你想鬼今天會喝酒——喝可樂？」

进了房子，——妹妹就问「你想鬼今天会喝酒——喝可乐？」

jìn le fángzì, —— mèimeī jiù wèn "nǐ xiǎng guǐ jīntiān huì hé jiǔ —— hé kělè?"
We entered the house and younger sister asked "do you think the ghosts will drink the wine or drink the cola today?"

10. 忽然我們聽見一個聲音，好像跟人說話一樣：

忽然我們听见一个声音，好像跟人说话一样：

hūrán wǒmen tīngjiàn yī ge shéngyīn, hǎoxiàng gēn rén shuō huà yíyàng;
Suddenly we heard a sound, like a person speaking.

「酒——可樂都好。——我們——喜歡喝水。」
「酒——可乐都好。——我们——喜欢喝水。」
"jiǔ —— kělè dōu hǎo. —— wǒmen —— xǐhuān hē shuǐ."
"Wine or cola are both okay. And we also like to drink water."

11. 餃子——酒都掉在地 上。

饺子——酒都掉在地 上。

jǐǎozi —— jiǔ dōu diào zài dì shàng.
The jiaozi and the wine fell to the ground.

12. 我們跑出房子去了，——跑回家了。

我们跑出房子去了，——跑回家了。

wǒmen pǎo chū fángzì qù le, —— pǎo huí jiā le.
We ran out of the house and ran home.

13. 第二天回房子裏——一看。
第二天回房子里——一看。

dì èr tiān huí fángzì lǐ —— yī kàn.
The next day we returned to the house and looked.

14. 在房子後頭找到了幾個酒瓶，——全都是空的。
在房子后头找到了几个酒瓶，——全都是空的。
zài fángzì hòutóu zhǎodào le jǐ ge jiǔ píng, —— quán dōu shì kōng de.
But behind the house we found several wine bottles, and they were all empty.

15. ——地上——有一封信說「謝謝你們給我們菜——酒。我們以後再見！」
——地上——有一封信说「谢谢你们给我们菜——酒。我们以后再见！」
— dì shàng —— yǒu yì fēng xìn shuō "xièxie nǐmen gěi wǒmen cài jiǔ, wǒmen yǐhòu zài jiàn!"
And on the ground was a letter which said "Thank you for giving us food and wine. We will see you later."

SEQUENCE AND SIMULTANEITY

Narrative Sequence

以後/以後 yǐhòu after

以後/以后 yǐhòu can be used in two different ways: as a clause-final connector, and as a clause-initial connector. These uses are illustrated here.

S₁ 以後/以后, S₂ Si yǐhòu, S₂ after S₁, S₂

The characteristics of clause-final 以後/以后 *yǐhòu* are as follows:

- Clause-final 以後/以后 *yǐhòu* occurs at the end of the first clause. Note that its equivalent in English, the word 'after,' occurs at the beginning of its clause.
你來了以後，我們就吃飯。
After you arrive, we will eat.
- V-J le may occur immediately after the verb in the first VP.
她畢了業以後就找工作。
她毕了业以后就找工作。
After she graduates she will look for a job.
- J iù or, less commonly, 才 cái may occur immediately before the second VP.
When 才 cái occurs, it reflects the speaker's perception that the sequence took longer than expected or was in some way difficult to achieve. This relationship can often be expressed in English with the expression *only then or only after*. For more on 就 jiù and 才 cái see Chapter 4: Adverbs.
她畢了業以後就買車。
她毕了业以后就买车。
After she graduates she will buy a car.
- The 以後/以后 *yǐhòu* clause must come first.
弟弟看完了書以後就睡覺了。
弟弟看完了书以后就睡觉了。
Younger brother finished reading the book and went to sleep.

⑥弟弟睡覺了看完了書以後。

弟弟睡覺了看完了书以后。

dìdì shuì jiào le kàn wán le shū yǐhòu.
Clause-initial 以後/以后 *yǐhòu*

S₁, 以後/以后 S₂. S₁, yǐhòu S₂. S₁, afterwards S₂.

我們先做功課，以後再看電視。
我们先做功课，以后再看电视。

wǒmen xiān zuò gōngkè, yǐhòu zài kàn diànshì.
First we'll do homework, (and) afterwards we will watch television.

現在不努力，以後會後悔的。
现在不努力，以后会后悔的。

xìànzài bù nǔlì, yǐhòu huì hòuhuǐ de.
If you are not hard-working now, later you will regret it.

Clause-initial 以後/以后 *yǐhòu* is not associated with any special uses of le or 就 jiù or 才 cái. Grammatically, it is a sentence adverb. See Chapter 4: Adverbs.
然後/ránhòu is a clause-initial connector. It is equivalent in meaning and usage to clause-initial 以後/以后 *yǐhòu*.

後來/hàilái ránhòu afterwards

他在大學念法律，後來就當法官了。
他在大学念法律，后来就当法官了。

tā zài dàxué niàn fǎxué, hòulái jiù dāng fǎguān le.
He studied Chinese. Later he went to China.

然後/然后 *ránhòu* is a clause-initial connector. It is equivalent in meaning and usage to 以後/以后 *yǐhòu* and 然後/ránhòu.

* Some native speakers of Mandarin treat 畢業/bìyè as a single verb and others consider it a verb + object. Here it is used as a verb + object, with le occurring directly after the verb 畢/bì.

* Some native speakers of Mandarin treat 畢業/bìyè as a single verb and others consider it a verb + object. Here it is used as a verb + object, with le occurring directly after the verb 畢/bì.

— ... 就 ... yī... jiù as soon as ...

我一看就知道他是一個明星。

我一看就知道他是一个明星。

wǒ yī kàn jiù zhīdào tā shì yī ge míngxīng.

As soon as I saw him I knew he was a star.

先 ... 後 / 后 ... xiān... hòu ... first ... afterwards ...

你炒菜的時候先放油後放菜。

你炒菜的时候先放油后放菜。

nǐ chǎo cài de shíhou xiān fàng yóu hòu fàng cài.

When you stir-fry vegetables, first you put in the vegetables.

先 ... 再 ... xiān... zài.. first ... afterwards ...

我們先吃飯再聊天吧。

我们先吃饭再聊天吧。

wǒmen xiān chí fàn zài liáo tiān ba.

Let's first eat and then chat.

2. Put the phrases in these sentences in the proper order to match the English translations.

1. 以後就我了回學校去看電影。

以後就我了回学校去看电影。

yǐhòu jiù wǒ le huí xuéxiào qù kàn diànyǐng.

After I see a movie I will return to school.

2. 以後我們寫字就念一本中文書了了。

以后我们写字就念一本中文书了了。

yǐhòu wǒmen xiě zì jiù niàn yī běn Zhōngwén shū le le.

After we wrote characters we read a Chinese book.

3. 學生就吃早飯以後去到公園了。

学生就吃早饭以后去到公园了。

xuéshēng jiù chī zǎofàn yǐhòu qù dào gōngyuán le.

After the students eat breakfast they will go to the park.

4. 就他們買票上車了以後了。

就他们买票上车了以后了。

jiù tāmen mǎi piào shàng chē le yǐhòu le.

After they bought the tickets they got on the bus.

5. 就我回家跑步了。(跑步 pǎo bù to jog)

jiù wǒ huí jiā pǎo bù le.

After I jog I will go home.

3. Rewrite these sentences, adding 以後 / 以后 yǐhòu, 就 jiù, and 了 le in their proper locations as required.

1. 我畢業到中國去。

我毕业到中国去。

wǒ bìyè dào Zhōngguó qù.

After I graduate I will go to China.

2. 我哥哥畢業到中國去。

我哥哥毕业到中国去。

wǒ gēge bìyè dào Zhōngguó qù.

After older brother graduated he went to China.

3. 我吃晚飯去看電影。

我吃晚饭去看电影。

wǒ chī wǎnfàn qù kàn diànyǐng.

After I eat dinner I will see a movie.

4. 我吃晚飯看電影。

我吃晚饭看电影。

wǒ chī wǎnfàn kàn diànyǐng.

After I ate dinner I saw a movie.

5. 我考試想吃冰淇淋。

我考试想吃冰淇淋。

wǒ kǎoshì xiǎng chī bīngqīn.

After I take the test I will eat ice cream.

Reverse Sequence

以前 yǐqián before

S₁ 以前 yǐqián, S₂. Before S₁, S₂.

以前 yǐqián like 以後 / 以后 yǐhòu, is a clause-final connector.

The characteristics of 以前 yǐqián are as follows:

- 以前 yǐqián occurs at the end of the first clause. Note that its equivalent in English, the word *before*, occurs at the beginning of its clause.

你出国以前，先學一點外語。
你出国以前，先学一点外语。

nǐ chū guó yǐqián, xiān xué yìdiǎn wàiyǔ.
Before you go abroad, first study a foreign language for awhile.

■ V-了 le cannot occur in the first clause of 以前 yǐqián sentences.

你上課以前先吃早飯吧。

你上课以前先吃早饭吧。

nǐ shàng le kè yǐqián xiān chī zǎofàn ba.
Before you go to class, first eat breakfast.

②你上了課以前先吃早飯吧。

你上了课以前先吃早饭吧。

nǐ shàng le kè yǐqián xiān chī zǎofàn ba.
Before you go to class, first eat breakfast.

■ The 以前 yǐqián clause typically comes first in 以前 yǐqián sentences.*

睡覺以前得先洗澡。

睡觉以前得先洗澡。

shuì jiào yǐqián děi xiān xǐ zǎo.
Before you go to sleep, you should first get washed.

③洗澡，睡覺以前。

洗澡，睡觉以前。

xǐ zǎo, shuì jiào yǐqián.

4. Place these phrases in the proper order to correspond to the English translations.

1. 每天以前我都吃早飯洗澡。

每天以前我都吃早饭洗澡。

měitiān yǐqián wǒ dōu chī zǎofàn xǐzǎo.
Every day before I eat I wash.

2. 以前看電影把功課先做完。

以前看电影把功课先做完。

yǐqián kàn diànyǐng bǎ gōngkè xiān zuòwán.
Before you watch a movie finish your school work.

3. 我以前來中國已經學兩年的中文了。

我以前来中国已经学两年的中文了。

wǒ yǐqián lái Zhōngguó yǐjīng xué liǎng nián de Zhōngwén le.
Before I came to China I already studied Chinese for two years.

4. 先去以前公園看好不好天氣。
先去以前公园看好不好天气。

xiān qù yǐqián gōngyuán kàn hǎo bù hǎo tiānqì.
Before you go to the park first see if the weather is good.

5. 以前回家請寄信到郵局去。

以前回家请寄信到邮局去。
yǐqián huí jiā qǐng jù xìn dào yóujú qù.
Before you go home please go to the post office to mail a letter.

■ V-了 le cannot occur in the first clause of 以前 yǐqián sentences.

5. Complete these sentences by adding 以前 yǐqián and 了 le where appropriate to correspond to the English translations.

1. 我去中國不會說中文。

我去中国不会说中文。
wǒ qù Zhōngguó bù huì shuō Zhōngwén.
Before I went to China I couldn't speak any Chinese.

2. 我們學漢字先學拼音。

我们学汉字先学拼音。
wǒmen xué hànzì xiān xué pīnyīn.
Before we study characters we will learn pinyin.

3. 電影開始可以說話。

电影开始可以说话。
diànyǐng kāishǐ kěyǐ shuō huà.
Before the movie begins it is okay to talk.

4. 我上大學在銀行工作一年。

我上大学在银行工作一年。
wǒ shàng dàxué zài yínháng gōngzuò yīnián.
Before I went to college I worked at a bank for a year.

5. 你回家我們先喝茶吧。

你回家我们先喝茶吧。
nǐ huí jiā wǒmen xiān hē chá ba.
Before you go home let's have a cup of tea.

* In everyday speech, an 以前 yǐqián clause may be added to the end of a sentence as an afterthought.

Simultaneity

的時候/的时候 de shíhou when

The characteristics of 的時候/的时候 de shíhou sentences are as follows:

- 的時候/的时候 de shíhou occurs at the end of the first clause. Note that the English equivalent of 的時候/的时候 de shíhou, *when*, occurs at the beginning of its clause.

哥哥開車的時候老聽音樂。

哥哥开车的时候老听音乐。

gēge kāi chē de shíhou lǎo ting yīnyuè.

When older brother drives he always listens to music.

The 的時候/的时候 de shíhou clause is the first clause in the sentence.*

開車的時候不許吃飯。

开车的时候不许吃饭。

kāi chē de shíhou bù xǔ chī fan.

When driving a car you are not allowed to eat.

④不許吃飯，開車的時候。

不许吃饭，开车的时候。

bù xǔ chīfàn, kāi chē de shíhou.

Note: 的時候/的时候 de shíhou is more precise than the English word *when* in the relationship it marks. English *when* can be used to indicate either simultaneity or sequence. In Mandarin, 的時候/的时候 de shíhou is only used to indicate simultaneous situations. It cannot be used to join clauses related in terms of sequence. For sequence, you must use 以後/以后 yǐhòu. Compare the following sentences.

Sequence: *When* or *after* can be used in English. 以後/以后 yǐhòu is used in Mandarin.

你完了飯以後請給我打電話。

你完了饭以后请给我打电话。

nǐ chīwán le fàn yǐhòu qǐng gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà.

After (when) you have finished eating, please phone me.

Simultaneous situations: *When* is used in English. 的時候/的时候 de shíhou is used in Mandarin.

弟弟忙的時候總是睡得很少。

弟弟忙的时候总是睡得很少。

dìdì máng de shíhou zǒngshì shuì dé hěn shǎo.

When younger brother is busy he always sleeps very little.

6. Translate these sentences into English.

1. 天氣熱的時候應該多喝水。

天气热的时候应该多喝水。

tiānqì rè de shíhou yīnggāi duō hē shuǐ.

2. 你讀書的時候最好別聽音樂。

你读书的时候最好别听音乐。

nǐ dú shū de shíhou zuì hǎo bié tīng yīnyuè.

3. 弟弟忙的時候都不吃午飯。(午飯/午饭 wǔfan lunch)

弟弟忙的时候都不吃午饭。

dìdì máng de shíhou dōu bù chī wǔfan.

4. 天氣好的時候孩子都在外頭玩。

天气好的时候孩子都在外头玩。

tiānqì hǎo de shíhou háizi dōu zài wàitóu wán.

wǒ zuò gōnggòngqìchē de shíhou dōu zài wàitou wán.

7. Put these phrases in the proper order to correspond to the English translations.

1. 的時候我小老騎自行車。

de shíhou wǒ xiǎo lǎo qí zìxíngchē.
When I was young I always rode my bicycle.

2. 都爸爸吃早飯看報紙的時候。

都爸爸吃早饭看报纸的时候。
dōu bàba chī zǎofàn kàn bàozhǐ de shíhou.
When dad eats breakfast he always reads the newspaper.

3. 的時候我累不好考得。

de shíhou wǒ lèi bù hǎo kǎo de.
When I am tired I don't do well on exams.

* In everyday speech, the 的時候/的时候 de shíhou clause is sometimes added afterwards as an afterthought.

4. 中國飯你吃的時候應該用筷子。

中國飯你吃的時候應該用筷子。

Zhōngguó fàn nǐ chī de shíshí yīnggāi yòng kuàizi.
When you eat Chinese food you should use chopsticks.

5. 都的時候我姐姐開車唱歌。

都的時候我姐姐開車唱歌。

dōu de shíshí wǒ jiějie kāi chē chàng gē.
When my older sister drives the car she always sings.

CONTRAST

Paired Connectors

The following contrast connectors may occur in pairs. 虽然/虽然 suírán although
may occur at the beginning of the first clause. The other connectors occur in the second
clause, either before the subject or the VP.

雖然/雖然	<u>suírán</u>	although	可是	<u>kěshì</u>	but
但(是)	<u>dànshì</u>				
不過/不過	<u>búguò</u>				

Note: As with other paired connectors, one or both of the connecting words may be omitted.

聽說那個電影很可怕，但是我看。

聽說那個電影很可怕，但是我还看。

tīngshuō nà ge diànyǐng hěn kǒngpà, dànshì wǒ hái yào kàn.
I heard that movie is very scary, but I still want to see it.

這件衣服雖然很漂亮，可是很貴。

這件衣服虽然很漂亮，可是很貴。

zhè jiàn yīfú suírán hěn piàoliang, kěshì hěn guì.
Although this article of clothing is pretty, it's expensive.

苦瓜很苦，不過我還喜歡吃。

苦瓜很苦，不过我还喜欢吃。

kǔguā hěn kǔ, bùguò wǒ hái xǐhuān chí.
Bitter melon is very bitter, but I still like to eat it.

Adverbial Connectors

These connectors occur directly before the verb and indicate contrast. 却 què may co-occur with other contrast connectors in the same clause.

却 què in contrast

那輛車子很貴，但他却要買。

那輛車子很貴，但他却要买。

nà liàng chēzi hěn guì, dàn tā què yào mǎi.
That car is expensive, but he still wants to buy it.

倒是 dàoshì contrary to one's expectation based on the context

這個東西倒是很好，就是價錢太貴。

这个东西倒是很好，就是价钱太贵。

zhè ge dōngxi dàoshi hěn hǎo, jǐu shì jiàqian tài guì.
This thing is very good, it's just that the price is too high.

那個地方我倒是想去看一看。

那个地方我倒是想去看一看。

nà ge dìfang wǒ dàoshi xiǎng qù kànnyíkàn.
I want to go to that place and have a look.

(You might not expect that I'd want to go there.)

Indicating Contrast through the VP

Stative Verb 是 shì Stative Verb It's Stative Verb all night, but ...

美國菜好是好，可是肉太多。

美国菜好是好，可是肉太多。

Měiguó cài hǎo shì hǎo, kěshì ròu tài duō.
American food is good all night, but there is too much meat.

這雙鞋子貴是貴但我還想買。

这双鞋子贵是贵但我还想买。

zhè shuāng xiézǐ guì shì guì dàn wǒ hái xiǎng mǎi.
These shoes are expensive all right but I still want to buy them.

Sentence Initial Connectors: S₁, _____ S₂

These words link two sentence or clauses. They occur at the beginning of the second sentence or clause. Note that 不過/búguò can also occur directly before the VP.

不過/不过 búguò however, nevertheless

他歷史學得不好，不過數學學得很好。

他歷史學得不好，不過數學學得很好。

tā lìshǐ xuéde bù hǎo, búguò shùxué xuéde hěn hǎo.

He is not doing well in history. However, he is doing very well in math.

然而 ránér however, nevertheless

自由好是好，然而也不能濫用自由。

自由好是好，然而也不能濫用自由。

zìyóu hǎo shì hǎo, ránér yě bù néng lànyòng zìyóu.

Freedom is very good, but you should not abuse freedom.

反而 fǎnlér on the contrary

他小時候很用功，長大以後反而不用功了。

他小時候很用功，長大以後反而不用功了。

tā xiǎo shíhou hěn yōnggōng, zhǎngdà yǐhòu fǎnlér bù yōnggōng le.

When he was young he was very hard working, but after he grew up he wasn't hardworking anymore.

反過來/反过来 fǎnguólái conversely

這個政策對病人不方便。反過來對醫院也沒有什麼好處。

這個政策對病人不方便。反過來對醫院也沒有什麼好處。

zhè ge zhèngcè duì bìngren bù fāngbiàn. fǎnguólái duì yīyuàn yě méi yǒu shénme hàochu.

This policy is not convenient for patients. Conversely, it's not particularly beneficial for the hospital either.

(要)不然(yào)bùrán otherwise

快吃吧！要不然飯菜都涼了。

快吃吧！要不然飯菜都涼了。

kuài chī ba! yào bùrán fàn cài dōu liáng le.

Hurry up and eat! Otherwise the food is going to get cold.

否則/fóuzé otherwise

我們趕快走吧。否則來不及了。

我們趕快走吧。否則來不及了。

wǒmen gǎnkuài zǒu ba. fóuzé láibùjí le.

We'd better hurry up and go. Otherwise we won't be on time.

8 Complete each sentence by adding the appropriate contrast connector to match the English translation. For some sentences, more than one choice is possible.

1. 我很想去看你，——今天沒有空。

我真想去看你，——今天沒有空。

wǒ hěn xiǎng qù kàn nǐ, —— jīntiān méi yǒu kōng.

I really want to go see you, but I have no free time today.

2. 她要我們今天八點準時到，——她自己却沒準時。

她要我們今天八點准时到，——她自己却没准时。

tā yào wǒmen jīntiān bā diǎn zhǔn shí dào, —— tā zìjǐ què méi zhǔnshí.

She wanted us to arrive punctually at 8, but she herself was not on time.

3. 他很聰明，——他有一點懶。

他很聰明，——他有一點懶。

tā hěn cōngming, —— tā yě yǒu yídiǎn lǎn.

He is very smart, but he is a little lazy.

4. 我很討厭他。——，他也不喜歡我。

我很讨厌他。——，他也不喜欢我。

wǒ hěn tǎoyàn tā, ——, tā yě bù xǐhuān wǒ.

I despise him. Conversely, he doesn't like me either.

5. 學外語要每天復習，——學不好。

學外語要每天复习，——学不好。

xué wài yǔ yào měitiān fùxí, —— xuébuhǎo.

When you study a foreign language you have to review every day. Otherwise you will not learn it well.

6. 我去了中國，——沒看萬里長城。

我去了中国，——没看万里长城。

wǒ qù le Zhōngguó, —— méi kàn WànLǐ Chángchéng.

I went to China, but I didn't see the Great Wall.

7. 那個電影很多人要看。你最好早買票，——你也許買不到。

那個电影很多人要看。你最好早买票，——你也许买不到。

nà ge diànyǐng hěn duō rén yào kàn. nǐ zìjǐ hǎo zǎo mǎ piào, —— nǐ yěxǐ mǎbùdào.

Lots of people want to see that movie. You'd better buy a ticket early. Otherwise you may not be able to buy one.

8. 我送給爺爺一個鐘。爺爺——不高兴，——非常生氣。
我送给爷爷一个钟。爷爷——不高兴，——非常生气。
wǒ sòng gěi yéye yī ge zhōng. yéye —— bù gāoxìng, —— fēicháng shēngqì.
I gave grandpa a clock. Grandpa was not happy, on the contrary he was really mad.

9. 我要看王老師，——我找不到他的辦公室。

我要看王老师，——我找不到他的办公室。

wǒ yào kàn Wáng lǎoshi, —— wǒ zhǎobudào tā de bàngōngshì.
I want to see teacher Wang, but I can't find his office.

10. 他人很好，——他很沒意思。

tā rén hěn hǎo, —— tā hěn méi yìsì.
He is a nice person, but he is really not interesting.

CONDITIONALITY

if ... then ...

The following words can all be translated with the English conditional connector

if[†] The adverb 就 jiù typically occurs before the VP of the following clause.

Note: 如果 rúguǒ and 要是 yàoshi are interchangeable in meaning and are used in colloquial Mandarin. The other expressions are used in formal, literary structures.

if S/V/P₁

如果	rúguǒ
要是	yàoshi
假如	jiǎnrú
若是	ruòshì
倘若	tǎngruò
假若	jiǎruò
假使	jiáshǐ
倘使	tǎngshǐ
設若	shèru

要是你一定要買車就買吧。
要是你一定要买车就买吧。

yàoshi nǐ yíding yào mǎi chē jiù mǎi ba.
If you really want to buy a car, then buy one.

假如我是你，我就跟他結婚。

假如我是你，我就跟他结婚。

jǐarú wǒ shì nǐ, wǒ jiù gēn tā jiéhūn.
If I were you, I would marry him.

假使你今天能來我就不去了。

假使你今天能来我就不去了。

jǐashí nǐ jīntān néng lái wǒ jiù bù qù le.
If you can come today I won't go.

除非 chǐfēi unless, only if

除非他的態度改變了，問題才能解決。

除非他的态度改变了，问题才能解决。

chǐfēi tā de tài dù gǎibiàn le, wèntí cái néng jiějue.
Only if his attitude changes can this problem be resolved.

除非你天天做運動，要不然就會越來越胖。

除非你天天做运动，要不然就会越来越胖。

chǐfēi nǐ tiāntiān zuò yundòng, yào burán jiù huì yá yuè pàng.
Unless you exercise every day, you will get fatter and fatter.

就是 ... 也 ... jiùshì ... yě ... even if

就是你幫助我，我也做不完。

就是你帮助我，我也做不完。

jǐushì nǐ bāngzhù wǒ, wǒ yě zuòbuwán.
Even if you help me, I won't be able to finish.

就是你勸我，我還是不願意跟你去。

就是你劝我，我还是不愿意跟你去。

jǐushì nǐ quàn wǒ, wǒ hái shì bú yuàn yì gēn nǐ qù.
Even if you urge me to do it, I still am not willing to go with you.

* In Chinese culture a clock is a symbol of the end of life. It is not appropriate to give one as a gift, especially to an older person.

† The English word *if* also introduces indirect questions. *I don't know if he knows the answer.* There is no word in Mandarin with that function.

CAUSE-AND-EFFECT

因為 / 因为 ... 所以 ... yīnwei ... suǒyǐ ... because ... therefore ...

因为他人很好，所以别人都喜歡他。

因为他人很好，所以别人都喜欢他。

yīnwei tā rén hěn hǎo, suǒyǐ bié rén dōu xǐhuān tā.
Since he is a good person, other people all like him.

他人很好，所以别人都喜歡他。

他人很好，所以别人都喜欢他。

tā rén hěn hǎo, suǒyǐ bié rén dōu xǐhuān tā.
He is a good person, so other people all like him.

既然 ... (就) jìrán ... (jiù) since it is the case ...

既然你已經學過，就不必再學了。

既然你已經學過，就不必再學了。

jìrán nǐ yǐjīng xuéguo, jiù bù zài xué le.
Since you have already studied (it) once, you don't have to study it again.

因此 yīncǐ because of this

波士頓的冬天很冷。因此需要多穿一點衣服。

波士頓的冬天很冷。因此需要多穿一点衣服。

Bōshìdūn de dōngtiān hěn lěng. yīncǐ xūyào duō chuān yídiǎn yīfú.
Boston's winters are very cold. Therefore you need to wear more clothes.

9. Add the appropriate connecting words to complete each sentence according to its English translation.

7. — 我家離這兒很遠，— 我很少回家。
— 我去过几次，— 我认识路。
— 我家离这儿很远，— 我很少回家。

Since I've gone (here) a few times I know the road.

8. — 我去過幾次，— 我認識路。
— 我去過幾次，— 我認識路。
— 我家離這兒很遠，— 我很少回家。

Since my home is very far from here, I rarely go home.

9. — 太陽從西邊出來，— 我不會跟你結婚的。
— 太陽从西边出来，— 我不会跟你结婚的。
— 太陽從西邊出來，— 我不會跟你結婚的。

Only if the sun comes up in the west will I be willing to marry you.

10. 外頭正下着大雨，— 我們今天無法去野餐了。
外头正下着大雨，— 我们今天无法去野餐了。

It's raining hard outside. Because of this we can't go to the picnic.

11. 你得用功一點，— 就不能學好中文。
你得用功一点，— 就不能学好中文。
你得用功一點，— 就不能學好中文。

You have to be a little more hardworking. Otherwise you won't be able to master Chinese.

3. 我常跟她說話，— 我還不知道她叫什麼名字。
我常跟她说话，— 我还不知道她叫什么名字。
Although I came here last year, I still don't know very many people.
I often speak with her but I still do not know her name.

CHAPTER 13

Focusing Constructions

12. 赶快起床吧，——你会遲到。
gǎnkuài qǐ chuáng ba. —— ní huì chídào.
Hurry up and get out of bed. Otherwise you will be late.
13. —— 你已經把作业都做好了，今天晚上可以多看一點電視。
—— 你已經把作业都做好了，今天晚上可以多看一点电视。
—— nǐ yǐjīng bǎ zuòyè dōu zàohǎo le, jīntiān wǎnshàng kěyǐ duō kàn yídiǎn diànshi.
Since you've already finished your homework, tonight you can watch a little more television.
14. 她不喜歡吃肉。—— 你勸她吃她也不會吃。
她不喜欢吃肉。—— 你劝她吃她也不会吃。
tā bù xǐhuān chī ròu. —— nǐ quàn tā chī tā yě bú huì chī.
She doesn't like to eat meat. Even if you urge her to eat it she still won't eat it.
15. —— 現在不努力，以後會後悔的。
—— 现在不努力，以后会后悔的。
—— xiànzài bù nǔlì, yǐhòu huì hòuhuǐ de.
If you are not hard-working now, later you will regret it.

Focusing constructions emphasize an NP by making it prominent in some way.
Mandarin has many constructions which focus the NP. Here are the most common.

Topicalization

When an NP that is not the subject occurs at the beginning of the sentence, it functions as its topic.

這本書，老師說我們都應該看。
这本书，老师说我们都应该看。
zhè běn shū, lǎoshī shuō wǒmen dōu yīnggāi kàn.
This book, the teacher said we should all read it.

The topic may be preceded by a word which introduces it as the topic.

Topic Marker	Meaning
關於 / 關於 NP	regarding, concerning NP
guānyú NP	
對於 / 對於 NP	regarding, concerning NP (formal literary)
duìyú NP	
對 NP 來說	concerning NP
對 NP 来说	
dìu NP 裏 shuō	
至於 / 至於 NP	regarding, concerning, as for NP (formal literary)
zhìyú (NP)	

The use of these topic markers is illustrated in the following sentences.

關於出國學習的事情，我們必須考慮考慮。

關於出国学习的事情，我们必须考虑考虑。

guānyú chū guó xuéxí de shìqíng, wǒmen bìxū kǎolǜ kǎolǜ.

As for the matter of leaving the country to study, we should think it over for awhile.

他很節省，對於貴重的東西都沒興趣。

他很节省，对于贵重的东西都没兴趣。

tā hěn jiéshěng, duìyú guìzhòng de dōngxi dōu méi xìngqù.
He is very thrifty. He is not interested in valuable possessions.

我們已經盡力了，至於成功還是失敗，就不重要了。

我們已經尽力了，至于成功还是失败，就不重要了。

wǒmen yǐjīng jìnli le, zhìyě chénggōng háishi shibài, jiù bú zhònggyào le.

We've already done what we could. As to whether we will succeed or fail, that is not important.

對中國人來說，面子很重要。

对中国人来说，面子很重要。

dui Zhōngguó rén lái shuō, miànzi hěn yàojin.

Face is very important to Chinese people.

是 shì . . . (的 de)

The words 是 shì and 的 de can be used to focus a phrase in the sentence. The focused phrase must occur before the verb.

- 是 shì occurs directly before the focused phrase.
- 的 de occurs immediately after the verb or at the end of the sentence, before any sentence-final particles. *

你是在哪儿學的中文？

你是在哪儿学的中文？

nǐ shì zài nǎr xué de Zhōngwén?

Where did you study Chinese?

你是在美國長大的嗎？

你是在美国长大的吗？

nǐ shì zài Měiguó zhǎng dà de ma?

Did you grow up in America?

是 shì before the subject NP:

Q: 是誰提的這個問題？

A: 是我提的。

是谁提的这个问题？

是我提的。

shì shéi tí de zhè ge wèntí?

Who raised this question?

It is I who raised (it).

是 shì before the location phrase:

我們是在日本認識的。

我们是在日本认识的。

wǒmen shì zài RìBěn rènshi de.

We met in Japan.

是 shì before the time phrase:

我是去年去中國的。

我是去年去中国的。

wǒ shì zài Niūnyuē mǎi chē de.

It was in New York where I bought the car. OR

I am the person who bought the car in New York.

When 的 de follows the verb it is always interpreted as a marker of emphasis. That is

我是在紐約買的車。

我是在纽约买的车。

wǒ shì zài Niūnyuē mǎi de chē.

can only mean "It was in New York where I bought the car."

■ 是 shì may occur alone, or it may occur with 的 de. When 是 shì and 的 de occur together in a sentence, they focus a phrase and indicate that the situation described in the sentence occurred in the past.

弟弟是在紐約上大學，不是在麻州上大學。

dìdi shì zài Niūnyuē shàng dàxué, bù shì zài Málzhōu shàng dàxué.

Younger brother attends college in New York, not in Massachusetts.

弟弟是在紐約上大學的。

弟弟是在纽约上大学的。

dìdi shì zài Niūnyuē shàng dàxué de.

Younger brother attended college in New York.

是 shì can be used to focus the subject NP, the time phrase, or the PP, including a PP indicating location.

是 shì before the subject NP:

Q: 是誰提的這個問題？

A: 是我提的。

是谁提的这个问题？

是我提的。

shì shéi tí de zhè ge wèntí?

Who raised this question?

It is I who raised (it).

是 shì . . . 的 de and V-了 le provide different information about past time/completed events.

V-了 le indicates that an event occurred. (See Chapter 6: The Suffixes 了 le, 着 zhe, and 過 guo.)

* 的 de at the end of the sentence sometimes results in an ambiguous meaning in which 既儿 de can be interpreted as a marker of emphasis or as a marker of noun phrase modification.

我買了車。

我买了车。

wǒ mǎi le chē.
I bought a car.

是 shì . . . 的 de emphasizes a detail of an event that has occurred.

我是在紐約買的車。

我是在纽约买的车。

wǒ shì zài Niǔyùē mǎi de chē.

It was in New York that I bought a car.

Because 是 shì . . . 的 de and V- 了 le provide different perspectives on an event, 是 shì . . . 的 de and V- 了 le do not occur in the same sentence.

1. Rewrite the following sentences, using 是 shì . . . 的 de to focus the bracketed phrase in each sentence. Translate your sentences into English.

1. 我〔今天〕買書。

我〔今天〕买书。

wǒ〔jīntiān〕mǎi shū.

2. 我〔在公園裏〕看到王老師。

我〔在公园里〕看到王老师。

wǒ〔zài gōngyuán lǐ〕kàndào Wáng lǎoshī.

3. 我〔去年〕認識陳麗麗。

我〔去年〕认识陈丽丽。

wǒ〔qù nián〕rènzhī Chén Lìlì.

4. 我〔在車上〕買票。

我〔在车上〕买票。

wǒ〔zài chē shàng〕mǎi piào.

5. 我〔跟張老師〕借書。

我〔跟张老师〕借书。

wǒ〔gēn Zhāng lǎoshī〕jiè shū.

6. 我〔在南京〕吃豆沙包。(豆沙包 dòushā bāo red bean paste buns)

wǒ〔zài Nánjing〕chī dòushā bāo.

7. 我〔二零零一年〕去中國。

wǒ〔èr líng líng yī nián〕qù Zhōngguó.

8. 我〔昨天晚上〕看那個電影。

我〔昨天晚上〕看那个电影。

wǒ〔 zuótíān wǎnshàng〕kàn nà ge diànyǐng.

9. 我哥哥〔在中國〕練太極拳。(練 liàan to study, to practice)

我哥哥〔在中国〕练太极拳。(太极拳/太极拳 tàijíquán

wǒ gēge〔zài Zhōngguó〕liànr tàijíquán. Chinese shadow boxing)

10. 你〔幾月幾號〕生? (幾月幾號/几月几号 jǐ yuè jǐ hào

你〔几月几号〕生?

nǐ〔jǐ yuè jǐ hào〕shēng?

2. Translate the following sentences into Mandarin, using 是 shì . . . 的 de to focus the bracketed phrase in each sentence. Note that the words “it was . . . that” are used as a focusing construction in English and do not get translated into Mandarin.

1. I grew up in America. (長大 zhǎng dà no grow up)

2. It was [in 1985] that I graduated.

3. I came [from China].

4. It was [in America] that I studied Chinese.

5. They got married in 1992. (結婚 jiéhūn to get married)

除了 . . . 以外 chúle . . . yǐwài

除了 chúle NP₁ 以外 yǐwài + 都 dōu except for NP₁

除了妹妹以外，我們都喜歡看電影。

除了妹妹以外，我们都喜欢看电影。

chúle mèimei yǐwài, wǒmen dōu xǐhuān kàn diànyǐng.
Except for younger sister, we all like to see movies.

除了 chúle NP₁ 以外 yǐwài + 也 yě including NP₁

除了米飯以外，他們也吃了饅頭。

除了米饭以外，他们也吃了馒头。

chúle mǐfàn yǐwài, tāmen yě chīle mántou.
Besides rice, they also ate steamed bread.

- The full pattern includes both 除了 chúle and 以外 yǐwài. However, either 除了 chúle or 以外 yǐwài may be omitted.
 - 茄子以外 我什麼都吃。
 - 茄子以外 我什么都吃。
 - qiézi yǐwài wǒ shéme dōu chī.
Except for eggplant I eat anything.

除了吃，他什麼都不做。
除了吃，他什么都不做。

除了吃，他什麼都不做。
除了吃，他什么都不做。

Except for eating, he doesn't do anything.

3. Complete these sentences by translating the English into Mandarin. Translate the completed sentences into English.

- 除了七月以外, August's weather is also very hot.
chúle qiyuè yě yíwài,
- 除了咖啡以外, I also like to drink tea.
chúle kāfēi yě yíwài,
- 除了美國飯以外, Mom can also cook Chinese food.
chúle Měiguó fàn yě yíwài,

4. In addition to my younger brother, 我妹妹也結婚了。
我妹妹也结婚了。

wǒ mèimeī yě jiéhūn le.

5. 除了姐姐以外, we all went to China last year.

chúle jiějie yě yíwài,

6. Except for my name, 我把字都寫錯了。
我把字都写错了。

wǒ bǎ zì dōu xiècuò le.

7. 除了弟弟以外, we all ate until we were full.

chúle dìdì yě yíwài,

8. 除了這個字以外, I know all of the other characters.

chúle zhè ge zì yě yíwài,

9. In addition to me, 我弟弟也學漢語。

wǒ dìdì yě xué Hángyǔ.

10. Except for Zhao Ming, 我們都看過那個電影。
我们都看过那个电影。

wǒmen dōu kàn guò nà ge diànyǐng.

連/達 NP 也/都 VP lián NP yě/dōu VP even NP does VP
連/達 lián occurs before the subject. 也 yě or 都 dōu may occur right before the VP.

弟弟連餅乾也喜歡吃。
弟弟也喜欢吃餅乾。

Even younger brother likes to eat cookies.

When the focused NP is the object of the VP, 連/達 lián plus the focused NP occur right after the subject NP and before the Verb. 也 yě or 都 dōu may be included after the focused NP, at the beginning of the VP.

弟弟連菠菜也喜歡吃。
弟弟也喜欢吃菠菜。

Younger brother even likes to eat spinach.

(Literally: Younger brother even likes to eat.)

4. Rewrite these sentences, using 連/達 lián to focus the bracketed phrase. The English translations are provided.

1. 我很笨。[一個字]都不認識。

我很笨。[一个字]都不认识。

wǒ hěn bèn. [yī ge zì] dōu bù rènshí.

I am really stupid. I don't even recognize one character.

2. 我弟弟很聰明。他聽得懂[日語]。

我弟弟很聪明。他听得懂[日语]。

wǒ dìdì hěn cóngming. tā tīngde dǒng [Rìyǔ].

My younger brother is very smart. He even understands Japanese.

3. 弟弟沒去過[紐約]。

弟弟没去过[纽约]。

dìdì méi qùguò [Niǔyuē].

Younger brother hasn't even been to New York.

4. 誰都喜歡陳麗麗。[哥哥]喜歡她。

谁都喜欢陈丽丽。[哥哥]喜欢她。

shéi dōu xǐhuān Chén Lìli. [gēge] xǐhuān tā.

Everyone likes Chen Lili. Even older brother likes her.

5. 我買不了電影票。我沒有〔一塊錢〕。
我买不了电影票。我没有〔一块钱〕。
wǒ mǎibùlǎo diànyǐng piào. wǒ méiyǒu [yī kuài qián].
I can't buy a movie ticket. I don't even have one dollar.
6. 這些字你都寫錯了。〔你的名字〕寫錯了。
这些字你都写错了。〔你的名字〕写错了。
zhè xiě zì nǐ dōu xiècuò le. [nǐ de míngzì] xiècuò le.
You've written all of these characters wrong. You've even written your name wrong.
7. 他沒說〔一句話〕。
他没说〔一句话〕。
tā méi shuō [yì jù huà].
He didn't even say one word.
8. 誰都去過蘇州。〔弟弟〕去過。
谁都去过苏州。〔弟弟〕去过。
shéi dōu qùguò Sūzhōu. [dìdi] qùguo.
Everyone has been to Suzhou. Even younger brother has been there.
9. 她病了。不會吃〔冰淇淋〕。
她病了。不会吃〔冰淇淋〕。
tā bìng le. bù huì chī [bīngqílm].
She's sick. She can't even eat ice cream.
10. 他什麼都吃。他吃〔苦瓜〕。
他什么都吃。他吃〔苦瓜〕。
tā shénme dōu chī. tā chī [kǔguā].
He eats everything. He even eats bitter melon.

Passives

The structure of passive sentences in Mandarin is as follows:

[affected object] [被 bèi / 讓 ràng / 變變 ràng NP] [verb]

When the passive marker is 讓 ràng, the verb may be preceded by 紿/gěi.

飛機票被我丢了。
飞机票被我丢了。
fēijī piào bèi wǒ diū le.

飛機票讓我丢了。
飞机票让我丢了。
fēijī piào ràng wǒ diū le.

飛機票叫我給丢了。
飞机票叫我给丢了。
fēijī piào jiào wǒ gěi diū le.

這些字你都寫錯了。〔你的名字〕寫錯了。
这些字你都写错了。〔你的名字〕写错了。
zhè xiě zì nǐ dōu xiècuò le. [nǐ de míngzì] xiècuò le.
The airplane ticket was lost by me.

Mandarin passive sentences generally imply that the event is 'bad news' for the narrator or one of the participants in the situation.

我的皮包被小偷偷走了。
wǒ de píbāo bèi xiǎotōu tōuzǒu le.
My handbag was stolen by a thief.

Activity verbs in passive sentences are often followed by Resultative Verb endings. (See Chapter 7: The Resultative Structure and Potential Suffixes.)

餅乾都被弟弟吃完了。
bǐnggān dōu bèi dìdi chīwán le.
The cookies were eaten up by younger brother.

餅乾都被弟弟吃完了。
bǐnggān dōu bèi dìdi chīwán le.
The bad guy was arrested.

壞人被捕了。
huài rén bèi bǔ le.
The bad guy was arrested.

Note: Perhaps because of its more specialized meaning as a source of 'bad news,' the use of the passive in Mandarin is relatively restricted and is much less common than in English.

5. Rearrange the phrases in each sentence to correspond to their English translations.

1. 妹妹吃完蛋糕讓了。
妹妹吃完蛋糕让了。
mèimei chīwán dànghāo ràng le.
The cake was eaten up by younger sister.

看上去他很年轻。	kànshàng qù tā hěn niánqīng.	<i>He appears to be very young.</i>
依我看这件事情很容易做。	yǐ wǒ kàn zhè jiàn shìqíng hěn róngyì zuò.	<i>From my perspective this thing is easy to do.</i>
据我所知美国人不是都很有钱。	jù wǒ suǒ zhī Měiguó rén bù shì dōu hěn yǒu qián.	<i>From what I know Americans are not all rich.</i>
实际上窮人也很多。	shíjìshàng qióng rén yě hěn duō.	<i>In fact there are also a lot of poor people.</i>
很多人認為中文很难學。其實並不難。	hěn duō rén rěnwéi Zhōngwén hěn nán xué. qíshí bìng bù nán.	<i>Many people think that Chinese is difficult to study. In fact it isn't difficult at all.</i>
很多人认为中文很难学。其实并不难。	tā yǐjīng liùshí suì le. dànrì tā cái yǒu sìshí suì zuǒyòu.	<i>She is already 60 years old. But she looks around 40 years old.</i>
竟然	jìngrán	<i>unexpectedly, to one's surprise</i>
白	bái	<i>in vain</i>
徒然	túrán	<i>in vain, futile</i>
简直	jiǎnzhí (+Negation)	<i>simply (always occurs with negation)</i>

1. Select an adverb from the two lists above to complete each of the following sentences to best match its English translation.

1. 你以為他知道。 —— 他一點也不知道。
You think he knows. In fact he doesn't know at all.

2. 我 —— 在哪兒見過他。
I seem to have seen him somewhere before.

3. 他 —— 學了三年中文。一句話也不會說。
He studied three years of Chinese in vain. He can't speak a word.

4. 他 —— 一年沒跟爸爸說話。
He studied three years of Chinese in vain. He can't speak a word.

5. —— 她的中文說得很好。
Her Chinese is very good.

6. 他 —— 很認真。
He seems to be very conscientious.

7. 她已經六十歲了。但是 —— 她才四十四歲左右。
She is already 60 years old. But she looks around 40 years old.

Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases That Occur Before the Verb Phrase
The following adverbs which express speaker perspective occur before the verb phrase. They comment on the factuality, predictability, or futility of the situation. Illustrative sentences and additional exercises involving these adverbs are presented in Chapter 4: Adverbs.

明確/明确	míngquè	clearly
好像	hǎoxiàng	seemingly, apparently
顯得/显得	xiǎndé	seemingly, apparently
並/并	bìng (+Negation)	not at all (always occurs with negation)
居然	jūrán	unexpectedly, to one's surprise
竟然	jìngrán	unexpectedly, to one's surprise
白	bái	in vain
徒然	túrán	in vain, futile
简直	jiǎnzhí (+Negation)	simply (always occurs with negation)

9. 他 ____ 忘了女朋友的生日。

tā ____ wàng le nǚ péngyoudé shēngrì.
Totally unexpectedly, he forgot his girlfriend's birthday.

10. 他 ____ 一點也不知道。

他 ____ 一點也不知道。
tā ____ yídiǎn yě bù zhīdào.
He simply doesn't know anything.

11. 她是在中國長大的。____ 她不喜歡吃中國飯。

tā shì zài Zhōngguó zhǎng dà de. ____ tā bù xǐhuān chī Zhōngguó fàn.
She grew up in China. Who would have thought she doesn't like to eat Chinese food!

12. ____，他們兩個人的關係不太好。

____，他們兩個人的關係不太好。
tā shì zài Zhōngguó zhǎng dà de. ____ tā bù xǐhuān chī Zhōngguó fàn.
From what I can see, the relationship between the two of them is not very good.

Sentence Final Particles

- Most final particles convey speaker perspective, providing information about the speaker's attitude towards the preceding sentence or about the speaker's intentions in saying or writing the sentence.* In this way, Mandarin final particles often serve the same role as sentence intonation in English.
- Final particles always occur in neutral tone.
- Nothing in the sentence goes after the final particle. It is literally the last word in the sentence.

吗 a marker of obviousness

他不吃啊。
tā bù chī a.
He's not eating.

您是美国人吗。
nín shì Měiguórén a.
You must be an American.

呀 ya variation of 吗, used when the previous word ends in a vowel

今天外头的风好大呀！
jīntiān wàitóu de fēng hǎo dà ya!
The wind outside is very big!

你踩到我的脚了呀！
nǐ cǎidào wǒ de jiǎo le ya!
You've stepped on my foot!

呢 ne used as the marker of a yes-no questioning when asking the same question about a second subject:

* The final particle 吗/má has a grammatical function. It indicates that the sentence is a yes/no question. (See Chapter 8: Questions and Question Words.)

你是學生嗎？
nǐ shì xuéshēng ma?
Are you a student?

呢 ba marker of a rhetorical question or a suggestion

昨天的音樂會不錯吧？
zuótān de yīnyuèhuì bùcuò ba?

昨天的音樂會不錯吧？
zuótān de yīnyuèhuì bùcuò ba?
Yesterday's concert wasn't bad, was it?

他是你弟弟吧？
tā shì nǐ dìdi ba?
He must be your younger brother, right?

他是你弟弟吧？
tā shì nǐ dìdi ba?
He must be your younger brother, right?

吃饭吧！
chī fan ba!
Let's eat!

Q. 你爺爺呢？

你爷爷呢？

nǐ yéye ne?

How about your grandfather?

呢。ne used to indicate a continued situation.

他還在這兒呢。

tā hái zài zhèr ne.

He is still here.

他們在吃飯呢。

他们在吃饭呢。

tāmen zài chīfàn ne.

They are eating now.

你跟我一塊兒去嘛！

你跟我一块儿去嘛！

nǐ gēn wǒ yī kuàr qù ma!
Go with me!

是星期天嘛！辦公室當然沒人。

是星期天嘛！办公室当然没人。

shì xīngqītiān ma! bàngōngshì dāngrán méi rén.
It's Sunday. Of course there is no one in the office.

嘛。ma marker of persuasion or to emphasize the obvious

OK! OK! I understand!

已經九點啦。他當然下班了！

已经九点啦。他当然下班了！

yǐjīng jiǔ diǎn la. tā dāngrán xià班 le!

It is already 9 o'clock. Of course he's left work!

喔。wō marker of surprise, sudden realization, reminder

畢業後，別把我忘了喔！

毕业后，别把我忘了喔！

bì yè hòu, bié bǎ wǒ wàng le wo!

After you graduate, don't forget me!

哦。o marker of doubt; used for reminders

畢業後，別把我忘了哦！

毕业后，别把我忘了哦！

bì yè hòu, bié bǎ wǒ wàng le o!

After you graduate, don't forget me!

咯。lo marker of obviousness

下雨咯。

下雨咯。

xìà yǔ lo.

It's raining.

2. Add the appropriate final particle to each sentence to correspond to the English translation.

1. 時間到了。我們走 —— !
时间到了。我们走 —— !
shíjiān dào le. wǒmen zǒu —— !
The time has arrived. Let's go!

2. 是星期日。一定得找你的朋友一起來 —— !
是星期日。一定得找你的朋友一起来 —— !
shì xīngqīrì. yìdìng děi zhǎo nǐ de péngyǒu yíqǐ lái —— !
It's Sunday. You should certainly get your friends together and come!

3. 今天的天氣好冷 —— !
今天的天气好冷 —— !
jìntiān de tiānqì hǎo lěng —— !
It's really cold today!

4. 外頭風大。快到屋子里來 —— !
外头风大。快到屋子里来 —— !
wàitóu fēng dà. kuài dào wūzǐ lǐ lái —— !
It's windy outside. Hurry up and come into the room!

5. 先借我二十塊錢 — ! 我明天一定會還你 — !

先借我二十块錢 — ! 我明天一定会还你 — !

xān jiè wǒ èrshí kuàiqian — ! wǒ míngtiān yídǐng huì huán nǐ — !

Lend me \$20. I will certainly return it to you tomorrow!

6. 請進來坐一會兒 — !

请进来自坐一会儿 — !

qǐng jìn lái zuò yīhuà — !

Come on in and sit for awhile!

7. 我很想你 — ! 你也想我嗎 ?

我很想你 — ! 你也想我吗 ?

wǒ hěn xiǎng nǐ — ! nǐ yě xiǎng wǒ ma?

I really miss you. Do you miss me?

8. 我從來沒去過法國 — !

我从来没去过法国 — !

wǒ cónglái méi qùguo Fǎguó — !

I've never been to France before!

9. 這樣不太好 — ?

这样不太好 — ?

zhè yàng bù tài hǎo — ?

Doing in this way isn't so good, huh?

10. 學中文好難 ! 怎樣才能學好 — ?

学中文好难 ! 怎样才能学好 — ?

xué Zhōngwén hǎo nán zěnyàng cǎi néng xuéhǎo — ?

Studying Chinese is really hard! What do we have to do to finally learn it?

3. Add a final particle to each sentence in the story to best convey the meaning.

1. 我的小貓在沙發上睡得很舒服 — !

我的小猫在沙发上睡得很快活 — !

wǒ de xiǎomāo zài shāfā shàng shuì de hěn shūfú — !

My little cat is sleeping comfortably on the sofa!

2. 我看他已經睡了兩個小時了，就對他說：「起來 — !

我看他已经睡了两个小时了，就对他说：「起来 — !

wǒ kàn tā yǐjǐng shuì le liang ge xiǎoshí le, jiù duì tā shuō: "qǐnai — !

I see he's already been sleeping a couple of hours and I say to him: "get up!

3. 你已經睡了很久 — !

你已经睡了很久 — !

nǐ yǐjǐng shuì le hěn jiǔ — !

You've already been sleeping a long time!

4. 小貓看了看我，好像對我說：「幹嘛？別吵 — !

小猫看了看我，好像对我说：「干嘛？别吵 — !

xiǎomāo kàn le kàn wǒ, hǎoxiàng duì wǒ shuō: "gànmá? bié chǎo — !"

The little cat looked at me as if to say to me "What's the matter? Don't bother me!"

5. 他又繼續睡 — 。

他又继续睡 — 。

tā yòu jìxù shuì — .

And he continued to sleep.

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 1

1. 十四 shí sì
2. 23
3. 二十八 èr shí bā
4. 56
5. 三十九 sān shí jiǔ
6. 74
7. 六十七 liù shí qī
8. 22
9. 九十二 jiǔ shí èr
10. 18
11. 七十七 qī shí qī
12. 88
13. 二十六 èr shí liù
14. 41
2. 一千一百七十萬
六百七十万
liù bǎi qīshí wàn
2. 51,622
3. 九百二十萬兩千〇二
九百二十万两千〇二
jiǔ bǎi èr shí wàn liǎng qiān lǐng èr
4. 3,842,156
5. 七萬四千
七万四千
qī wàn sì qiān
6. 490,130
7. 兩百萬
兩百万
liǎng bǎi wàn
8. 2,556,902
9. 四十三萬八千零五十九
四十三万八千零五十九
sì shí sān wàn bā qiān líng wǔ shí jiǔ
10. 983,251
3. 七十五個人左右
七十五个人左右
qīshí wǔ ge rén zuǒ yòu
2. 1000 or more
3. 差不多一百個人
差不多一百个人
chàbuduō yī bǎi gè rén
4. \$300 more or less

12. 六分之五

liù fēn zhí wǔ

wǒmen

7. 她們/她们 tāmen

8. 我 wǒ, 你 nǐ or 你們/你们 nǐmen

nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

7.1. 百分之九十一。

bǎi fēn zhí jiǔshí yī.

2. 分之二十六。

bǎi fēn zhí èrshí liù.

3. 百分之四十九。

bǎi fēn zhí sìshí jiǔ.

4. 八分之七。

bǎi fēn zhí qī.

5. 十一分之十。

shíyī fēn zhí shí.

6. 五分之四。

wǔ fēn zhí sì.

8. 1.05

8.1.05

2. 二點三/二點三

2. èr diǎn sān / èr diǎn sān

3. 1.1003

3. 1.1003

4. 點六六六/點六六六

4. diǎn liù liù liù / diǎn liù liù liù

5. .86

5..86

6. 九點七/九點七

6. jiǔ diǎn qī

7. 806

7. 806

8. 一點〇五/一點〇五

8. yí diǎn líng wǔ

9. 22.22

9. 22.22

10. 八點四/八點四

10. bā diǎn sì / bā diǎn sì

11. 1.6折

11. 1.6折

12. 7.5折

12. 7.5折

13. 4折

13. 4折

14. 3.5折

14. 3.5折

15. 5.1折

15. 5.1折

16. 60%

16. 60%

17. 百分之十八

17. bǎi fēn zhí shíbā

18. 8.8%

18. 8.8%

19. 百分之六十六

19. bǎi fēn zhí liùshíliù

20. 5.32%

20. 5.32%

21. 百分之三十五

21. bǎi fēn zhí sānshíwǔ

22. 7.34

22. 7.34

23. 八十二分之十一

23. shí èr fēn zhí shíyī

24. 9/10

24. 9/10

25. 11/12

25. 11/12

7. 她們/她们 tāmen

8. 我 wǒ, 你 nǐ or 你們/你们 nǐmen

9. 您 nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

wǒmen

7. 她們/她们 tāmen

8. 我 wǒ, 你 nǐ or 你們/你们 nǐmen

nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

nín

9. 您 nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

wǒmen

7. 她們/她们 tāmen

8. 我 wǒ, 你 nǐ or 你們/你们 nǐmen

nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 她們/她们 tāmen

8. 我 wǒ, 你 nǐ or 你們/你们 nǐmen

nín

10. 你 nǐ, 你 nǐ

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ

6. 咱們/咱们 zámen or 我們/我們 wǒmen

bànnián

10. 半年 bàn nián

wǒmen

7. 我 wǒ, 我自己 wǒ zìjǐ</

6. 一枝鉛筆 / 四枝鉛筆 sì zhī qiānbì
2. 三個朋友 / 三個朋友 sān gè péngyǒu
3. 十七本書 / 十七本書 shíqī běn shù
4. 那杯茶 nà bēi chá
5. 这十年 / 这十年 zhè shí nián
7. 1. 25 sheets of paper
2. those 6 chairs
3. 12 months
4. these 5 days
5. those 2 people
8. 1. 一九八〇年一月一號/ $\frac{1}{9}$
yī jiǔ bā líng nián yī yuè yī hào/hào
2. July 20, 1969
3. 一七六年七月四日
yī qī qī liù nián qī yuè sì rì
4. December 31, 1999
5. 二零零二年十月五日
èr líng líng èr nián shí yuè wǔ rì
6. November 25, 2003
7. 一九九七年二月十四日
yī jiǔ jiǔ qī nián èr yuè shí sì rì
8. May 8, 1945
9. 一九七零年八月十六日
yī jiǔ qī líng nián bā yuè shíliù rì
10. November 19, 1863
9. 1. 兩點過一刻 / 兩點過一刻
liǎng diǎn guò yí kè
2. 10:55
3. 四點差一刻 / 四點差一刻
sì diǎn chà yí kè
4. 5:17
5. 八點差十分 / 八點差十分
bā diǎn chà shí fēn OR
差十分八點 / 差十分八點
chà shí fēn bā diǎn
6. 12:30
7. 八點過二十分 / 八點過二十分
bā diǎn guò èrshí fēn
8. 5:58
9. 四點十分 / 四點十分
sì diǎn shí fēn
10. 8:59
- 10.1. 十八塊兩毛五分錢
十八块两毛五分钱
shíhuà kuài liang máo wǔ fēn qián
2. \$49.84
3.五百一十九塊三毛一分錢
3. my two older brothers
4. a few books about China
5. this very complicated Chinese character
- 五百一十九块三毛一分钱
wǔ bǎi yí jiǔ kuai sān máo yī fēn
qian
4. \$235.40
5. 一百一十七塊六毛二
yī bǎi yí shí qī kuai liù máo èr
6. \$726
11. 1 我的中文書
我的中文书
wǒ de Zhōngwén shù
2. 中國出的書
中國出的书
Zhōngguó chū de shù
3. 很甜的水果
hěn tián de shuǐguǒ
4. 你姐姐的男朋友
nǐ jiějie de nán péngyǒu
5. 我喜歡做的事
wǒ xǐ欢的事
我喜歡做的事
wǒ xǐhuān zuò de shì
6. 人口多的國家
人口多的国家
rénkǒu duō de guójiā
7. 在美國製造的車
在美國制造的车
zài Měiguó zhìzào de chē
8. 跟你說話的那個女孩子
跟你说话的那个女孩子
gēn nǐ shuō huà de nà ge nǚ háizi
9. 麻州某城市的一個大學
麻州某城市的一个大学
Mázhōu mǒu chéngshì de yī ge dàxué
10. 很難的中文考試
很难的中文考试
hěn nán de Zhōngwén Kǎoshì
12. 1. that very interesting movie
2. thus very expensive pair of earnings made
in Japan
6. a very expensive watch
7. the book that I read
8. students who took the exam yesterday
9. a red pen
10. students who study Chinese
13. 1. a cook
2. a patient OR a doctor
3. a driver
4. a rich person
5. a poor person
6. an airline passenger
7. a barber
8. a clerk
9. a tailor
10. a student
- Chapter 3*
1. 1. 張明很高。
張明很高。
Zhang Ming hěn gāo.
2. 張明很胖。
張明很胖。
Zhang Ming hěn pàng.
3. 張明很聰明。
張明很聪明。
Zhang Ming hěn cōngming.
4. 張明很用功。
張明很用功。
Zhang Ming hěn yònggōng.
5. 張明很謙虛。
張明很谦虚。
Zhang Ming hěn qiānxū.
6. 張明不矮。
張明不矮。
Zhang Ming bù ài.
7. 張明不瘦。
張明不瘦。
Zhang Ming bù shòu.
8. 你在这兒不可以抽煙。
你在这儿不可以抽烟。
nǐ zài zhèr bù kěyǐ chōu yān.
9. 我不會說日語。
我不会说日语。
wǒ bù huì shuō nǐ yǔ.
10. 那張畫兒不(很)漂亮。
那张画儿不(很)漂亮。
nà zhāng huà èr bù (hěn) piàoliang.
10. 張明不可靠。
張明不可靠。
Zhang Ming bù kěkào.
2. 1. 她不是學生。
她不是学生。
tā bì shì xuéshēng.
2. 我不喜歡做飯。
我不喜欢做饭。
wǒ bù xǐ欢做饭。
3. 公共汽車票不貴。
公共汽车票不贵。
gōnggōng qìchē piào bù guì.
4. 我不要買那本書。
我不要买那本书。
wǒ bù yào mǎi nà běn shù.
5. 那個人不好看。
那个人不好看。
nà ge rén bù hào kàn.
6. 我不想跟你說話。
我不想跟你说话。
wǒ bù xiǎng gēn nǐ shuō huà.
7. 這不是一個很大的問題。
这不是一个很大的问题。
zhè bù shì yí ge hěn dà de wèntí.
8. 你在这兒不可以抽煙。
你在这儿不可以抽烟。
nǐ zài zhèr bù kěyǐ chōu yān.
9. 我不會說日語。
我不会说日语。
wǒ bù huì shuō nǐ yǔ.
10. 那張畫兒不(很)漂亮。
那张画儿不(很)漂亮。
nà zhāng huà èr bù (hěn) piàoliang.
3. 1. 他沒有一個弟弟。
他没有一个弟弟。
tā méi yǒu yì gè dìdi.
2. 桌子上沒有書。
桌子上没有书。
zhuōzi shàng méi yǒu shù.

4. 會 / 会 huì
我听音乐听了一个小时。
wǒ tīng yīnyuè tīng le yí ge xiǎoshí。

5. 可以 kěyǐ
2. 我每天看一個半鐘頭的電視。
我每天看一个半钟头的电视。
wǒ měitiān kàn yí ge bàn zhōngtóu de diàntv.

6. 會 / 会 huì
3. 我去年坐了三次飛機。
我去年坐了三次飞机。
wǒ qùnnián zuò le sān cì feījī.

7. 會 / 会 huì
4. 我去過四次法國。
我去过四次法国。
wǒ qùguó sì cì Fǎguó.

8. 能 néng or 可以 kěyǐ
5. 我每天晚上學中文學三個小時。
我每天晚上学中文学三个小时。
wǒ měitiān wǎnshàng xué Zhōngwén xué sān ge xiǎoshí.

9. 能 néng
10. 可以 kěyǐ
11. 你能在圖書館借那本書。
你能在图书馆借那本书。
nǐ néng zài túshūguǎn jiè nà běn shù.

2. 你當然可以借我的車。
你当然可以借我的车。
nǐ dāngrán kěyǐ jiè wǒ de chē.

3. 開車的時候可以用手機嗎？
开车的时候可以用手机吗？
kāi chē de shíhou kěyǐ yòng shǒujī ma?

4. 我不可以不可以跟你談話？
我不可以不可以跟你谈话？
wǒ kěyǐ bù kěyǐ gǎn nǐ tán huà?

5. 美國人都會開車嗎？
美国人都会开车吗？
Měiguó rén dōu huì kāi chē ma?

6. 我今天晚上能不能跟你念書？
我今天晚上能不能跟你念书？
wǒ jīntiān wǎnshàng néng bù néng gān nǐ niàn shù?

7. 這個門你能夠開得開嗎？
这个门你能够开得开吗？
zhè gè mén nǐ néng kāidékāi ma?

8. 我只會做早飯。
我只会做早饭。
wǒ zhǐ huì zuò zǎofàn.

9. 貓都會抓老鼠。
猫都会抓老鼠。
māo dōu huì zhuā lǎoshǔ.

10. 你會不會說外語？
你会不会说外语？
nǐ huì bù huì shuō wàiyǔ?

13. 姐妹寫英文寫得很慢。
妹妹写英文写得很慢。
mèi mèi xiě Yīngwén xiě de hěn màn.

2. 中學生吃飯吃得很多。
中学生吃饭吃了很多。
zhōngxuéshēng chī fàn chí de hěn duō.
3. 姐姐說話說得很快。
姐姐说话说得很快。
jiějie shuō huà shuō de hěn kuài.
4. 弟弟吃飯吃得慢。
弟弟吃饭吃得慢。
dìdi chī fàn chí de hěn mǎn.
5. 爸爸看書看得很多。
爸爸看书看得很多。
bàba kàn shù kàn de hěn duō.
6. 我寫字寫得不好。
我写字写得不好。
wǒ xiě zì xiě de bù hǎo.
7. 媽媽開車開得很好。
妈妈开车开得很好。
mama kāi chē kāi de hěn hǎo.
8. 哥哥喝咖啡喝得少。
哥哥喝咖啡喝得少。
gēge hé kāfēi hé de shǎo.
9. 姐姐寫字寫得很漂亮。
姐姐写字写得很漂亮。
jiějie xiě zì xiě de hěn piào liang.
10. 弟弟看電視看得很多。
弟弟看电视看得很多。
dìdi kàn diànsī kàn de hěn duō.
- 14.1. 他偷偷地把蛋糕吃了。
ta toutou de bǎ dāngāo chīwán le.
2. 你得好好兒地做。
你得好儿地做。
nǐ déi hǎo'ér de zuò.
3. 慢慢走。
慢慢走。
mànman zǒu.
4. 快快寫吧！
快快写吧！
kuàikuai xiě ba!

5. 她慢慢地把門開開了。
她慢慢地把门开了。
tā mǎnnan de bǎ mén kāikāi le.
6. 她靜靜地躺在床上看書。
她静静地躺在床上看书。
tā jìngjìng de tǎng zài chuāngshàng kàn shù.
7. 風從南方輕輕地吹來。
风从南方轻轻地吹来。
fēng cóng nánfāng qīngqīng de chuī lái.
8. 他不知不覺地哭起來了。
他不知不觉地哭起来了。
tā bù zhī bù juéde kūqlai le.
9. 他們高興地跑回家了。
他们高兴地跑回家了。
wǒmen míngtiān bù kǎo Zhāngwén.
10. 請你慢慢兒地把事情再說一遍。
请你慢慢儿地把事情再说一遍。
qǐng nǐ mànmai de bǎ shìqíng zài shuō yíbiān.
- 15.1. 我沒看那個電影。
我没看那个电影。
wǒ méi kan nà ge diànyǐng.
2. 他沒坐公共汽車。
他没坐公共汽车。
tā méi zuò gōnggōngqìchē.
3. 我們星期六不上課。
我们星期六不上课。
wǒmen xīnglìliù bù shàng kè.
4. 我昨天沒上中文課。
我昨天没上中文课。
wǒ zuótiān méi shàng Zhōngguān kè.
5. 地今天沒吃冰淇淋。
地今天没吃冰激淋。
wǒ jīntiān méi chī bingqīlín.
6. 我今天沒戴手錶。
我今天没戴手表。
wǒ jīntiān méi dài shǒubìǎo.
7. 他沒穿大衣。
他没穿大衣。
tā méi chuān dàiyi.

8. 他沒送禮物。

他没送礼物。

tā méi sòng lǐwù.

6. 再 zài

7. 才 cái

Chapter 5

9. 我今天沒吃早飯。

我今天没吃早饭。

wǒ jīntiān méi chī zǎofàn.

1. 跟 gēn

2. 對/對 dù

3. 對/對 dù

4. 跟 gēn, 跟 gēn

5. 紿/給 gěi

6. 對/對 dù

7. 往 wǎng, 向 xiàng or 朝 cháo

8. 紿/給 gěi

9. 在 zài

10. 從/从 cóng, 從/从 cóng

11. 聳 dǎi

12. 對/對 dù

13. 到 dào

14. 往 wǎng, 向 xiàng or 朝 cháo

15. 由 yóu

16. 為/為 wéi

Chapter 4

1. 並/bìng

2. 一向/yìxiàng

3. 暫時/zàishí

4. 老lǎo

5. 從來/cónglái

6. 仍然/régrán

7. 一向/yìxiàng

8. 常cháng

9. 又yòu

10. 應該/應該 yīnggāi; 多duō

11. 應該/應該 yīnggāi; 少shǎo

12. 應該/應該 yīnggāi; 多duō

13. 不應該/不應該 bù yīnggāi

14. 仍然/réngrán

15. 老lǎo

16. 必須/bìxū

17. 的確/díquè

18. 差不多/diàobudō

19. 也許/yěxǐ

20. 果然/guǒrán

21. 一定/yìdīng

22. 的確/díquè

23. 猛bēng

24. 忽然/hūrán

25. 一向/yìxiàng

Chapter 6

1. 1. Your child has become taller.

2. I took the bus today (for a change.)

3. I don't eat breakfast anymore.

4. Younger sister says she doesn't like you anymore.

5. Younger brother writes characters fast now.

6. I've become really busy this week.

7. I don't ride planes anymore.

8. I don't want to take tests anymore.

9. Today it suddenly became cold.

10. We've already walked very far. I've become tired. I can't walk anymore.

2. 1. 我看了一個電影。

wǒ kàn le yī ge diànyǐng.

2. 我吃了晚飯。

wǒ chī le wǎnfàn.

3. 哥哥畢業了。

4. 哥哥毕业了。

5. 才cái

gēge bì yé le.

4. 我今天早上考試了。
我今天早上考試了。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng kǎo shì le.
5. 我這個星期考了中文。
我这个星期考了中文。
wǒ zhè ge xīngqī kǎo le zhōngwén.
6. 我今天早上買了兩枝鉛筆。
我今天早上买了两枝铅笔。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng mǎi le liāngzhī qiānbì.
7. 我們昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
我们昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
wǒmen zuótian wǎnshàng chīle Yìdàilí cài.
8. 他們在海邊玩了一天。
他们在海边玩了一天。
tāmen zài hǎibiān wán le yítiān.
9. 我在香港住了幾個月。
我在香港住了几个月。
wǒ zài Xiānggǎng zhù le jǐ ge yuè.
10. 我昨天晚上看電視看了半個小時。
我昨天晚上看电视看了半个小时。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng kàn diàntǐ zhǔnghào.
11. 昨天晚上宿舍很冷。
(Note: 冷 lěng is a stative verb.)
zuótian wǎnshàng sùshè hěn lěng.
12. 我在北京看了幾次京劇。
我在北京看了几次京剧。
wǒ zài Běijīng kàn le jǐ cì jīngjù.
1. 我昨天沒在公園裏跑步。
我昨天没在公园里跑步。
wǒ zuótian méi zài gōngyuán lǐ pǎo bù.
2. 我妹妹沒買毛衣。
我妹妹没买毛衣。
wǒ mèimeimei méi mǎi máoyī.
3. 我妹妹沒吃過日本料理。
我妹妹没吃过日本料理。
wǒ mèimeimei méi chīguò nihonranging.
4. 我今天早上考試了。
我今天早上考試了。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng kǎo shì le.
5. 我這個星期考了中文。
我这个星期考了中文。
wǒ zhè ge xīngqī kǎo le zhōngwén.
6. 我昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
我们昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
wǒmen zuótian wǎnshàng chīle Yìdàilí cài.
7. 我昨天晚上沒看電視。
我昨天晚上没看电视。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi kàn diàntǐ.
8. 我昨天沒給媽媽寫電子郵件。
我昨天没给妈妈写电子邮件。
wǒ zuótian méi gěi māma xiě diàntǐ yóujian.
9. 我昨天晚上沒洗頭。
我昨天晚上没洗头。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi xǐ tóu.
10. 我今天早上沒上中文課。
我今天早上没上中文课。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng méi shàng Zhōngwén kè.
1. 我昨天沒在公園裏跑步。
我昨天没在公园里跑步。
wǒ zuótian méi zài gōngyuán lǐ pǎo bù.
2. 我妹妹沒買毛衣。
我妹妹没买毛衣。
wǒ mèimeimei méi mǎi máoyī.
3. 我妹妹沒吃過日本料理。
我妹妹没吃过日本料理。
wǒ mèimeimei méi chīguò nihonranging.
4. 我今天早上考試了。
我今天早上考試了。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng kǎo shì le.
5. 我這個星期考了中文。
我这个星期考了中文。
wǒ zhè ge xīngqī kǎo le zhōngwén.
6. 我昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
我们昨天晚上吃了意大利菜。
wǒmen zuótian wǎnshàng chīle Yìdàilí cài.
7. 我昨天晚上沒看電視。
我昨天晚上没看电视。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi kàn diàntǐ.
8. 我昨天沒給媽媽寫電子郵件。
我昨天没给妈妈写电子邮件。
wǒ zuótian méi gěi māma xiě diàntǐ yóujian.
9. 我昨天晚上沒洗頭。
我昨天晚上没洗头。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi xǐ tóu.
10. 我今天早上沒上中文課。
我今天早上没上中文课。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng méi shàng Zhōngwén kè.

7. After they returned home they watched television.
我姐姐沒买鞋子。
wǒ jiějie méi mǎi xiézǐ.
My older sister didn't buy shoes.
8. After my older sister buys something she brings it home to show it to me.
我这个星期考了中文。
wǒ zhè ge xīngqī kǎo le zhōngwén.
9. What are you going to do after you graduate?
我妹妹今天沒穿她的毛衣。
mèimeimei jūntiān méi chuān tā de máoyī.
10. Every day after she gets out of bed she drinks a cup of tea.
我今天早上考試了。
wǒ jīntiān zǎoshàng kǎo shì le.
5. I took a trial run.
我考了试以后就看電影。
wǒ kǎo le shì yǐhòu jiù kàn diànyǐng.
2. I graduated.
我毕业了。
wǒ bì le yè (yǐhòu) jiù dào Zhōngguó qù.
3. I went to the park.
我昨天下了课以后就到公園去了。
wǒ zuótian xià le kè yǐhòu jiù dào gōngyuán qù le.
4. I went to the park.
我昨天下了课以后就到公園去了。
wǒ zuótian xià le kè yǐhòu jiù dào gōngyuán qù le.
5. I practised Chinese.
我昨天晚上没看電視。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi kàn diàntǐ.
6. I practised Chinese.
我昨天晚上没看電視。
wǒ zuótian wǎnshàng méi kàn diàntǐ.
7. I am eating now.
2. He's singing.
3. He's playing ball.
4. Xiaoming is doing school work right now.
5. Quiet! The teacher is speaking.
6. The teacher is seated talking to the students.
7. Dad eats breakfast while reading.
8. Mrs. Qian walked to the library holding a book.
9. Students often do school work while listening to music.
10. Mom is drinking coffee while reading the paper.
7. I've already read that book. I don't want to read it again.
2. Mom studied Japanese but she's never been to Japan.
3. I've never eaten French food before.

*Chapter 7**1. 看懂* kāndòng

2. 買到/买到 mǎidào
3. 寫錯寫錯 xiècuò
4. 看完 kànwan
5. 看到/看到 kàndào or
看見/看見 kāijian
6. 看懂 kandǒng
7. 用完 yòngwán
8. 找到 zhaodào or
找着 zhǎozháo
9. 看懂 kandǒng
10. 打開/打开 dǎkāi
- 2.1. 我沒找到我的手錶。
我沒找到我的手表。
- wǒ méi zhǎodào wǒde shǒubǎo.
2. 我聽懂了老師的話。
我听懂了老师的话。
- wǒ tīngdǒng le lǎoshī de huà.
3. 我把那個字寫錯了。
我把那个字写错了。
- wǒ xiěwán le nà fēng xìn.
4. 我寫完了那封信。
我写完了那封信。
- wǒ xiěwán le nà fēng xìn.
5. 我沒做完作業。
我没做完作业。
- wǒ méi zuòwán zuoyè.
6. 我買到了新的大衣。
我买到了新的大衣。
- wǒ mǎidao le xīn de dàyi.
7. 我沒吃飽。
我没吃饱。
- wǒ méi chībǎo.
8. 我把我的行李收拾完了。
我把我的行李收拾完了。
- wǒ bǎ wǒ de xínglì shōuhuà wán le.
9. 我沒找到那個新的中國飯館。
我没找到那个新的中国饭馆。
- wǒ méi zhǎodào nà gè xīn de Zhōngguó fanguǎn.
10. 我記住了那首詩。
我记住了那首诗。
- wǒ jìzhù le nà shǒu shī.
- 3.1. 聽不懂 听不懂 tīngbùdǒng
2. 買不到/买不到 mǎibùdào
3. 借得到 jièdào
4. 坐不下 zuòbùxià
5. 看不見/看不見 kànbiújiàn
6. 找不到 zhǎobùdào
7. 吃不下 chībùxià or 吃不完
chī buwán
8. 買不起/买不起 mǎibùqǐ
9. 記不住/记不住 jìbùzhù
10. 看得見/看得见 kāndejian
- 4.1. 走不回去 zǒubùhuíqù or
走不回来 zǒubùhuílái
2. 進不去/进不去 jìnbuqù
3. 拿不起來/拿不起来 nábuqlai
4. 伸不上去 pānbùshàngqù
5. 開不進去/开不进去 kāibùjìnqù
- 5.1. I don't have money. I cannot buy things.
(rice).
2. There are no chopsticks. We can't eat
cannot open it.
3. That door is very heavy. Children certainly
cannot open it.
4. We cannot eat this many dumplings.
5. She is unable to help you.
6. He doesn't have experience. He can't do
this work.
7. You can't carry this many things.
8. You've bought another raincoat. Can you
wear this many (raincoats)?
11. 你是否對中國歷史有興趣?
你是否對中國歷史有興趣?
nǐ shìfǒu duì Zhōngguó shǐyì?
12. 你吃飽了沒有?
你吃饱了没有?
nǐ chībǎo le méi yǒu?
- 2.1. 是。我是美國人。
是。我是美国人。
shì. wǒ shì Měiguó rén.
- 3.1. 你是誰?
你是谁?
nǐ shì shéi?
Who are you?
2. 你每天(幾點鐘)/什麼時候
吃早飯?
你每天(几点钟)/什么时候
吃早饭?
nǐ měitiān(jǐ diǎn zhōng/shénme shíhī) chī zǎofàn?
- What time do you eat breakfast every day?
3. 你昨天買了幾本書?
你昨天买了几本书?
nǐ zuótiān mǎi le jǐ běn shū?
- How many books did you buy yesterday?
4. 你明天跟誰去看電影?
你明天跟谁去看电影?
nǐ míngtiān gēn shéi qù kàn diànyǐng?
- Who are you going with tomorrow to see a movie?
5. 要。我要買那件毛衣。
要。我要买那件毛衣。
yào. wǒ yào mǎi nà jiàn máoyī.
6. 有。我有錢。
有。我有钱。
yǒu. wǒ yǒu qián.
7. 願意。我願意跟你去
(買東西)。
愿意。我愿意跟你去
(买东西)。
- yù. wǒ yùn yì gěn nǐ qù (mǎi
dōngxi).
8. 會。我會說漢語。
会。我会说汉语。
huì. wǒ huì shuō Hángyǔ.
9. 喜歡。我喜歡吃冰淇淋。
喜欢。我喜欢吃冰淇淋。
xǐhuān. wǒ xǐhuān chī bīngqīn.
10. 看過。我看過那個電影。
看过。我看过那个电影。
kàn guò. wǒ kàn guò nà ge diànyǐng.

5. (我們/你們)怎麼去?
 (我們/你們)怎麼去?
 (wǒmen/nǐmen) zěnmé qù?
 How are (we/you) going?
6. 電影票多少錢?
 电影票多少钱?
 diànyǐng piào duōshǎo qián?
 How much money is a movie ticket?
7. 你喜歡看哪國電影?
 你喜欢看哪国电影?
 nǐ xǐ欢 kàn nǎ guó diànyǐng?
 What country's movies do you like to see?
8. 我們晚上(什麼時候/幾點鐘)回家?
 我们晚上(什么时候/几点钟)回家?
 wǒmen wǎnshàng (shénme shíhou/jǐ diǎn zhōng) huí jiā?
 What time are we returning home at night?
9. 誰跟我們去?
 谁跟我们去?
 shéi gēn wǒmen qù?
 Who is going with us?
10. 你每天晚上吃幾碗飯?
 你每天晚上吃几碗饭?
 nǐ měitiān wǎnshàng chī jǐ wǎn fàn?
 How many bowls of rice do you eat every night?
11. 你姐姐什麼時候買了新的大衣?
 你姐姐什么时候买了新的大衣?
 nǐ jiějie shéme shíhou mǎile xīn de dày?
 When did your older sister buy a new coat?
12. 你最喜歡哪件毛衣?
 你最喜欢哪件毛衣?
 nǐ zuì xǐ欢 nǎ jiàn máoyī?
 Which sweater do you like best?
13. 這雙鞋子是在哪兒買的?
 这双鞋子是在哪儿买的?
 zhè shuāng xiézǐ shì zài nǎ mǎi de?
 Where were those shoes bought?
14. 你是幾月幾號生的?
 你是几月几号生的?
 nǐ shù jǐ yuè jǐ hào shēng de?
 What month and date were you born?
15. 這個學校一共有多少學生?
 这个学校一共有多少学生?
 zhè ge xuéxiào yǐgōng yǒu duōshǎo xuésheng?
 How many students does this school have altogether?
16. 湖的北邊/湖的東北邊
 湖的北边/湖的东北边
 hú de běibiān/hú de dōngběibiān
17. 湖的南邊/房子的東南邊
 湖的南边/房子的东南边
 hú de nánbiān/fángzì de dōngnánbiān
18. 房子的南邊/房子的東南邊
 房子的南边/房子的东南边
 fángzì de nánbiān/fángzì de dōngnánbiān
19. 山的南邊/山的西南邊
 山的南边/山的西南边
 shān de nánbiān/ shān de xīnánbiān
20. 誰都爬不上那座山。
 谁都爬不上那座山。
 shéi dōu pábusàng nà zuò shān.

6. 1. Q: How should we do this?

A: Do it however you want.

2. Q: Whom should we invite to eat?

A: Invite whenever you want.

3. Q: What should we buy mom?

A: Buy whatever you want.

4. Q: Where are we going?

A: We'll go wherever you want.

5. Q: How much tip do we give?

A: Give as much as you want.

6. Q: How do you write this character?

A: Write it however you want.

7. Q: Where is your younger brother?

A: Probably with my older brother.

Wherever older brother goes, younger brother goes.

8. Q: Who will you dance with tonight?

A: I will dance with whomever I want.

Chapter 9

3. 誰都喜歡喝咖啡。

誰都喜欢喝咖啡。

shéi dōu xǐ欢 hē kāfēi.

4. 什麼電影都可以。

什么电影都可以。

shéme diànyǐng dōu kěyǐ.

5. 什麼時候都行。

什么时候都行。

shéme shíhou dōu xíng.

6. 我什麼時候也沒有空。

我什么时候也没有空。

wǒ shéme shíhou yě méiyǒu kòng.

7. 誰都認識他。

谁都认识他。

shéi dōu rènshí tā.

8. 什麼時候都好。

什么时候都好。

shéme shíhou dōu hǎo.

1. 1. 房子的上頭/房子上
 房子的上头/房子上
 fángzì de shàngtóu/fángzì shàng

2. 房子的裏頭/房子裏
 房子的里头/房子里
 fángzì de lǐtóu/fángzì lǐ

3. 房子的左邊/房子的西邊
 房子的左边/房子的西边
 fángzì de zuǒbiān/fángzì de xībiān

4. 房子的右邊/房子的東邊
 房子的右边/房子的东边
 fángzì de yòubìan/fángzì de dōngbiān

5. 房子的下頭/房子下
 房子的下头/房子下
 fángzì de xiàtóu/fángzì xià

6. 房子的東邊
 房子的东边
 fángzì de dōngbiān

7. 房子的南邊
 房子的南边
 fángzì de nánbiān

8. 房子的中間
 房子的中间
 fángzì de zhōngjiān

9. 山的中間

山的中間

shān de zhōngjiān

10. 山的南邊

山的南邊

hú de nánbiān

11. 湖的北邊

湖的北邊

hú de běibiān

12. 房子的東邊

房子的东边

hú de dōngbiān

13. 房子的中間

房子的中间

hú de zhōngjiān

4. 1. at my side
2. to the left of the teacher
3. outside of the country
4. to the right of that person
5. in front of you
6. There is a book on the table.
(On the table there is a book.)
7. There is a person behind the house.
(Behind the house there is a person.)
8. Inside of the house there are no people.
9. My younger brother is between those two girls.
10. The library is in front of you.

5. 1. She climbed up the mountain.
2. He ran out of (from) that gate.
3. Everyday he runs up from there.
4. He took all of my money.
5. Younger sister brought over a lot of things.
6. Please bring this book back to the library.
7. Every afternoon he walks to the post office
to mail letters.
8. Please bring your Chinese textbook.
9. He walked home.
10. He doesn't want to walk into the room.
6. 1. 她把孩子背回家了。
tā bǎ háizi bei huí jiā le.
2. 我們把桌子搬進屋子裏去了。
wǒ men bǎ zhuōzi bān jìn wūzi lǐ qù le.
3. 爸爸把報紙放在桌子上。
bàba bǎ bǎozhǐ fàng zài zhùzǐ shàng.
4. 誰把杯子掉在地上了？
shéi bǎ bei zi diào zài dì shàng le?
5. 我們不能把車開進公園去。
wǒ men bù néng bǎ chē kāi jìn gōngyuán qù.
6. 我明天要把車開到王先生那兒去。
wǒ míngtiān yào bǎ chē kāi dào Wáng xiānsheng nà qù.
7. 我把弟弟從水裏拉出來了。
wǒ bǎ dìdi cóng shuǐlǐ lā chū lái le.
8. 你什麼時候把車開到我家來？
nǐ shénme shíhou bǎ chē kāi dào wǒ jiā lái?
9. 明天要把我弟弟帶到學校去。
wǒ míngtiān li wǒ jiā dàidào xuéxiào qù.
10. 車壞了！我們只好把它推回家了。
che huài le! wǒ men zhǐhăo bǎ tā tuī huí jiā le.
11. 請把書借給我。

7. 1. 圖書館離書店二十英里路。
túshūguǎn lí shùdiàn èrshí yīng lǐ lù.
2. 圖書館離書店兩英里路。
túshūguǎn lí shùdiàn liǎng yīng lǐ lù.
3. 圖書館離書店十八英里路。
túshūguǎn lí shùdiàn shíhā yīng lǐ lù.
4. 圖書館離書店一百英里路。
túshūguǎn lí shùdiàn yī bǎi yīng lǐ lù.
5. 加州離佛羅里達州遠嗎？
Jiāzhōu lí Fúluorídá zhōu yuǎn ma?
8. 公園離我家非常遠。
gōngyuán lí wǒ jiā fēicháng yuǎn.
9. 日本離韓國很近。
Rìběn lí Hánquó hěn jìn.
10. 哪裡離巴西相當遠。
Nǎlǐ lí Bāixī xiāngdāng yuǎn.

- Chapter 10*
1. 1. He loaned the camera to me to use.
2. Wang Ming sent the chocolates to his girlfriend.
3. The students carried all of the things to Professor Gao's house.
4. I have to return the books to the library.
5. Younger brother drove my car to school.
6. Where are you shipping the things to?
7. Please move the bookcase to the study.
8. Please bring your books here.
9. Please pull open the door.
10. Please bring my dictionary here.
11. She pushed her boyfriend out the door.
2. 1. I carried the child home on my back.
2. The students carried all of the things to Professor Gao's house.
3. I have to return the books to the library.
4. Younger brother drove my car to school.
5. Where are you shipping the things to?
6. Please move the bookcase to the study.
7. Please bring your books here.
8. I enlarged the photo.
9. Please pull open the door.
10. In less than an hour they finished packing the suitcases.
11. Can you wash this piece of clothing clean?
3. 1. 我把書拿回家了。
wǒ bǎ shù ná hái jiā le.
2. 我把書看了一半。
wǒ bǎ shù kàn le yíbàn.
3. 我把書看完了。
wǒ bǎ shù kàn wán le.
4. 我把書借給我弟弟。
wǒ bǎ shù jiè gěi wǒ dìdi.

5. 我把書丢了。
我把书丢了。
wǒ bǎ shū dīu le.
- Chapter II
1. 中文比英文難。
中文比英文难。
Zhōngwén bǐ Yīngwén nán.
2. 饭子比比薩好吃。
饭子比比萨好吃。
jiānzi bǐ bǐsà hàochī.
3. 文學比數學有意思。
文学比数学有意思。
wénxué bǐ shùxué yǒu yìsī.
4. 妹妹比弟弟用功。
妹妹比弟弟用功。
mèiméi bǐ dìdi yònggōng.
- 2.1. 貓比狗小。老鼠更小。
猫比狗小。老鼠更小。
māo bǐ gǒu xiǎo. lǎoshǔ gèng xiǎo.
2. 摩托車比自行車貴。車子更貴。
摩托车比自行车贵。车子更贵。
mótròuchē bǐ zìxíngchē guì. chēzi gèng guì.
3. 餅乾比水果甜。巧克力更甜。
饼干比水果甜。巧克力更甜。
bǐnggān bǐ shuǐguǒ tián. qiǎokèlì gèng tián.
4. 姐姐比妹妹高。哥哥更高。
姐姐比妹妹高。哥哥更高。
jiějie bǐ mèiméi gāo. gēge gèng gāo.
5. 她是我校最聰明的學生。
她是我校最聪明的学生。
tā shì wǒxiào zuì cōngming de xuésheng.
6. 她是我最好的朋友。
她是我最好的朋友。
tā shì wǒ zuì hào de péngyou.
3. 弟弟没有姐姐那麼高。
弟弟没有姐姐那么高。
dìdi méi yǒu jiějie nàme gāo.
8. 行盤和足球一樣好玩。
飞盘和足球一样好玩。
fēipán hé zúqú yìyàng hǎiwán.
9. 萬里長城跟埃及的金字塔一樣有名。
万里长城跟埃及的金字塔一样有名。
wàn lǐ Chángchéng gēn Èjī de Jīnzhà yìyàng yǒumíng.
10. 法語跟漢語不一樣難。
法语跟汉语不一样难。
Fǎyǔ gen Hàn yǔ bù yìyàng nán.
- 5.1. 弟弟比妹妹聰明。
弟弟比妹妹聪明。
dìdi bǐ mèiméi cōngming.
2. 妹妹沒有弟弟快。
妹妹没有弟弟快。
mèiméi méi yǒu dìdi kuài.
3. 弟弟比妹妹高。
弟弟比妹妹高。
dìdi bǐ mèiméi gāo.
4. 弟弟比妹妹吃得快。
弟弟比妹妹吃得快。
dìdi bǐ mèiméi chī de kuài.
5. 弟弟沒有妹妹说得快。
弟弟没有妹妹说得快。
dìdi méi yǒu mèiméi shuō de kuài.
6. 弟弟跟妹妹學得一樣多。
弟弟跟妹妹学得一样多。
nánháizi gēn nǚháizi yìyàng cōngming.
3. 小狗和小貓一樣可愛。
小狗和小猫一样可爱。
xiǎogǒu hé xiǎomāo yìyàng kě'ài.
2. 男孩子跟女孩子一樣聰明。
男孩子跟女孩子一样聪明。
nánhai gēn nǚhai yìyàng guī.
4. 電腦和計算機不一樣有用。
电脑和计算机不一样有用。
diànnǎo hé jiàncí jù de yòng.
8. 弟弟跟妹妹看書看得一樣快。
弟弟跟妹妹看书看得一样快。
dìdi gēn mèiméi kàn shù kàn de yíyàng kuài.
9. 哥哥更聰明。
哥哥更聪明。
gēge gèng cōngming.
10. 哥哥更高。
哥哥更高。
gēge gèng gāo.
11. 哥哥吃得更快。
哥哥吃得更快。
gēge chī dé gèng kuài.

2. 我下午沒有上午那麼忙。
我下午没有上午那么忙。
wǒ xiàwǔ méi yǒu shàngwǔ nàme máng.
3. 南瓜沒有西瓜那麼甜。
南瓜没有西瓜那么甜。
nánguā méi yǒu xīguā nàme tián.
4. 德國沒有俄國那麼冷。
德国没有俄国那么冷。
Dégǔ méi yǒu Èguó nàme lěng.
5. 大西洋沒有太平洋那麼大。
大西洋没有太平洋那么大。
Dàixiāng méi yǒu Tāipingyáng nàme dà.
6. 我的狗沒有我的貓那麼懶。
我的狗没有我的猫那么懒。
wǒde gǒu méi yǒu wǒ de māo nàme lǎn.
- 4.1. 這件毛衣跟那件毛衣一樣貴。
这件毛衣跟那件毛衣一样贵。
zhè jiàn máoyī gen nà jiàn máoyī yìyang guī.
2. 男孩子跟女孩子一樣聰明。
男孩子跟女孩子一样聪明。
nánhai gēn nǚhai yìyàng kě'ài.
3. 小狗和小貓一樣可愛。
小狗和小猫一样可爱。
xiǎogǒu hé xiǎomāo yìyàng kě'ài.
5. 朋友跟家裡人不一樣。
朋友跟家里人不一样。
péngyou gēn jiāzǐ yìyàng fāngbiàn.
6. 叉子跟筷子一樣方便。
叉子跟筷子一样方便。
chāzi gēn kuàizǐ yìyàng fāngbiàn.
7. 高跟鞋和球鞋不一樣舒服。
高跟鞋和球鞋不一样舒服。
gāogenxie hé qiúxié bù yìyàng shūfu.
8. 廣東菜沒有四川菜那麼辣。
广东菜没有四川菜那么辣。
Guǎngdōng cài méi yǒu Sichuan cài nàme là.
9. 日本沒有中國那麼大。
日本没有中国那么大。
Rìben méi yǒu Zhōngguó nàme dà.
10. 日本沒有中國那麼大。
日本没有中国那么大。
Japan is not as big as China.

10. 冬天沒有春天那麼美。
冬天沒有春天那麼美。
winter is not as pretty as spring.
7. 1. 中國人比美國人喝茶喝得多。
中國人比美国人喝茶喝得多。
Zhōngguó rén bǐ Měiguó rén hē chá hé de duō.
2. 我姐姐寫字寫得比我漂亮。
我姐姐写字写得比我漂亮。
wǒ jiějie xiě zì xiě de bǐ wǒ piàoliang.
3. 我沒有我哥哥玩飛盤玩得多。
我没有我哥哥玩飞盘玩得多。
wǒ méi yǒu wǒ gēge wán fēipán wán de duō.
4. 媽媽做菜做得比爸爸好。
妈妈做菜做得比爸爸好。
māma zuò cài zuò de bǐ bàba hǎo.
5. 哥哥跟爸爸唱歌唱得一樣好。
哥哥跟爸爸唱歌唱得一样好。
gēge gēn bàba chàng gē chàng de yiàng hǎo.
6. 我的馬跑得比別的馬快。
我的马跑得比别的马快。
wǒ de mǎ pǎo de bǐ bié de mǎ kuài.

Chapter 12

1. 1. 又 yòu or も yě
2. 還/還 hái or も yě; も
3. 跟 gēn or 和 hé
or も
4. 也 yě or も; 跟 gēn or 和 hé
5. φ, 還/還 hái or も yě; φ or も yě;
跟 gēn or 和 hé
6. 還/還 hái, 也 yě, or 另外 lìngwài
7. φ; 還/還 hái or も yě; 跟 gēn or
和 hé
9. φ; 還/還 hái or も yě
10. 跟 gēn or 和 hé or 還是/還是 háishi;
φ 還/還 hái or も yě
11. 跟 gēn or 和 hé
12. φ 又 yòu, or も yě
13. φ
14. φ
15. φ; 還/還 hái or φ; 跟 gēn or 和 hé
2. 1. 我們看了電影以後就回學校去。
我們看了电影以后就回学校去。
wǒmen kàn le diànyǐng yǐhòu jiù kàn le xuéxiào qù.
2. 我們寫了字以後就念了一本中文書。
我们写了字以后就念了一本中文书。
wǒmen xiě le zì yǐhòu jiù niàn le yī běn zhōngwén shù.
3. 學生吃了早飯以後就到公園去。
学生吃了早饭以后就到公园去。
xuésheng chī le zǎofàn yǐhòu jiù dào gōngyuán qù.
4. 他們買了票以後就上車了。
他们买了票以后就上车了。
tāmēn mǎi le piào yǐhòu jiù shàng chē le.
5. 我跑了步就回家。
我跑了步就回家。
wǒ pǎo le yǐhòu jiù huí jiā.
6. 我畢業了以後就到中國去。
我毕业了以后就到中国去。
wǒ bài yǐhòu jiù dào Zhōngguó qù.

Chapter 12

3. 我吃了晚飯以後就去看電影。
我吃了晚饭以后就去看电影。
wǒ chī le wǎnfàn yǐhòu jiù qù kàn diànyǐng.
4. 我吃了晚飯以後就洗了冰淇淋。
我吃了晚饭以后就吃了冰淇淋。
wǒ chī le wanfan yǐhòu jiù kǎn le bingqínlín.
5. 我考了試以後就想吃冰淇淋。
我考了试以后就想吃冰淇淋。
wǒ kǎo le shì yǐhòu jiù xiǎng chī bingqínlín.
6. 1. When the weather is hot you should drink more water.
2. When you are studying it is best not to listen to music.
3. When younger brother is busy he doesn't eat lunch.
4. When the weather is good the children all play outside.
5. When I ride the bus I always review Chinese characters.
7. 1. 我小的時候騎自行車。
我小的时候骑自行车。
wǒ xiǎo de shíhou lái qí xíngchē.
2. 爸爸吃早飯的時候都看報紙。
爸爸吃早饭的时候都看报纸。
bàba chī zǎofàn de shíhou dōu kàn bǎozǐ.
3. 我累的時候考得不好。
我累的时候考得不好。
què gāngguán yǐqian xiān kàn tiānqì hǎo bù hǎo.
5. 回家以前請到郵局去寄信。
回家以前请到邮局去寄信。
huí jiā yǐqian qǐng dào yóujú qù jì xìn.
5. 1. 我去中國以前不會說中文。
我去中国以前不会说中文。
wǒ qù Zhōngguó yǐqian bù huì shuō Zhōngguān.
5. 我姐姐開車的時候都唱歌。
我姐姐开车的时候都唱歌。
wǒ jiějie kāi chē de shíhou dōu chàng gē.
8. 1. 不遇/不過 búguò, 可是 kěshì,
我們學漢字以前先學拼音。
wǒmen xué hànzi yǐqian xiān xué pīnyīn.
8. 1. 不遇/不过 búguò, 可是 kěshì,
但是 dànshì

2. 然而 rán ér, 不過/bù guò, 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
3. 不過/bù guò, 或者/yě hūràn or 否則/fǒu zé, 但是 dàn shì
但是 dàn shì
4. 反過來/反過來 fǎnguólái or 否則/fǒu zé or 不但/bù dàn ... 而且 ér qǐe or 不但/bù dàn ... 反而 fān ér
5. 要不然/yào bùránhár or 否則/fǒu zé or 不然 suíránhár ... 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
6. 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
7. 要不然/yào bùránhár or 否則/fǒu zé or 不然 suíránhár ... 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
8. 不但/bù dàn ... 而且 ér qǐe or 不但/bù dàn ... 反而 fān ér
9. 不過/bù guò, 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
10. 不過/bù guò, 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
9. 1. 如果 rúguǒ (or other conditional in same category)
2. 雖然/suīrán ... 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
3. 不過/bù guò, 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
4. 雖然/suīrán ... 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
5. 不過/bù guò, 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
6. 雖然/suīrán ... 可是 kě shì, 但是 dàn shì
7. 因為/yīnwei ... 所以 suíyǐ
8. 因為/yīnwei ... 所以 suíyǐ
9. 除非/chūfēi ... 否則/fǒu zé or 所以 suíyǐ
10. 因此 yīncǐ or 所以 suíyǐ
11. 要不然/yào bùránhár or 否則/fǒu zé
12. 要不然/yào bùránhár or 否則/fǒu zé
13. 既然/jìnrán or 因爲/yīnwéi
14. 就是 jiùshì
15. 如果 rúguǒ (or other conditional in same category)
- Chapter 13
1. 我是今天買的書。
我是今天买的书。
wǒ shì jīntiān mǎi de shù.
OR

- 我是今天買書的。
我是今天买书的。
wǒ shì jīntiān mǎi shù de.
It was today that I bought the book.
2. 我是在公園裏看到王老師的。
我在公园里看到王老师的。
wǒ shì zài gōngyuán mǎi shù de.
It was in the park where I saw teacher Wang.
3. 我是去年認識陳麗麗的。
我是去年认识陈丽丽的。
wǒ shì qùnián rěnzhī Chén Lílì de.
It was last year that I met Lili Chen.
4. 我是在車上買的票。
我是在车上买的票。
wǒ shì zài chē shàng mǎi de piào.
It was on the car that I bought the ticket.
5. 我是跟張老師借書的。
我是跟张老师借书的。
wǒ shì gēn Zhāng lǎoshī jiè shù de.
I borrowed the book from teacher Zhang.
6. 我是在南京吃豆沙包的。
我在南京吃豆沙包的。
wǒ shì zài Nánjīng chī dòushā bāo de.
It was in Nanjing where I ate red bean Paste bun.
7. 我是二零零一年去的中國。
我是二零零一年去的中国。
wǒ shì èr líng líng yī nián qù de Zhōngguó.
It was in 2001 that I went to China.
8. 我是昨天晚上看的那個電影。
我是昨天晚上看的那个电影。
wǒ shì zuótian wǎnshàng kàn de nà ge diànyǐng.
It was last night that I saw that movie.
9. 我哥哥是在中國練太極拳的。
我哥哥是在中国练太极拳的。
wǒ gēge shì zài Zhōngguó liànn tàijíquán de.
It was in China where my older brother practiced taiji quan.
5. 我們去年都到中國去了。
我们去年都到中国去了。
wǒmen qùnián dōu dào Zhōngguó qù le.
Except for older sister, we all went to China last year.

10. 你是幾月幾號生的？
你是几月几号生的？
nǐ shì jǐ yuè jǐ hào shēng de?
What month and day were you born?
- 2.1. 我是在美國長大的。
我是在美国长大的。
wǒ shì zài Měiguó zhǎng dà de.
I was today that I bought the book.
2. 我是一九八五年畢業的。
我是一九八五年毕业的。
wǒ shì yī jiǔ bā wǔ nián bì yè de.
I was in the park where I saw teacher Wang.
3. 我是從中國來的。
我是从中国来的。
wǒ shì cóng Zhōngguó lái de.
It was last year that I met Lili Chen.
4. 我是在美國學中文的。
我是在美国学中文的。
wǒ shì zài Měiguó xué Zhōngwén de.
It was on the can that I bought the ticket.
5. 他們是一九九二年結婚的。
他们是—一九九二年结婚的。
tāmen shì yī jiǔ jiǔ èr nián jiéhūn de.
I borrowed the book from teacher Zhang.
- 3.1. 八月的天氣也很熱。
八月的天气也很热。
bayuè de tiānqì yě hěn rè.
In addition to July, August's weather is also very hot.
2. 他也喜歡喝茶。
我也喜欢喝茶。
wǒ yě xǐhuān hē chá.
Besides coffee, I also like to drink tea.
3. 媽媽也會做中國飯。
妈妈也会做中国饭。
māma yě huì zuò Zhōngguó fan.
Besides American food, mom can also cook Chinese food.
4. 除了我弟弟以外。
除了我弟弟以外。
chūle wǒ dìdi yǐwài.
In addition to my younger brother, my younger sister is also married.
5. 我連一塊錢也沒有。
我连一块钱也没有。
wǒ lián yì kuài qián yě méi yǒu.
I was in China where my older brother practiced taiji quan.
6. 違你的名字也寫錯了。
连你的名字也写错了。
lián nǐ de mǎnzuǐ yě xiècuò le.

6. 除了我的名字以外。
除了我的名字以外。
chūle wǒ mǎnzuǐ yě yǐwài.
Except for my name, I wrote all of the characters wrong.
7. 我們都吃飽了。
我们都吃饱了。
wǒmen dōu chībǎo le.
Except for younger brother, we all ate until we were full.
8. 我其他的(別的)字都認識。
我其他的(别的)字都认识。
wǒ qītā de (biéde) zì dōu rènshí.
Except for this character, I know all of the other characters.
9. 除了我以外。
除了我以外。
chūle wǒ yǐwài.
In addition to me, my younger brother also studies Chinese.
10. 除了趙明以外。
除了赵明以外。
chūle Zhào Míng yǐwài.
Except for Zhao Ming, we've all seen that movie.
- 4.1. 我連一個字都不認識。
我连一个字都不认识。
wǒ lián yì ge zì dōu bù rènshí.
3. 弟弟連紐約也沒去過。
弟弟连纽约也没去过。
dìdi lián Niǔyùé yě méi qùguo.
4. 邊邊也喜歡她。
连哥哥也喜欢她。
lián gēge yě xǐhuān tā.
5. 我連一塊錢也沒有。
我连一块钱也没有。
wǒ lián yì kuài qián yě méi yǒu.
6. 違你的名字也寫錯了。
连你的名字也写错了。
lián nǐ de mǎnzuǐ yě xiècuò le.

7. 他連一句話也沒說。

他連一句話也沒說。

tā lián yì jù huà yě méi shuō.

8. 連弟弟也去過。

連弟弟也去過。

lián dìdi yě qùguo.

9. 連冰淇淋也不會吃。

連冰淇淋也不會吃。

lián bīnglīn yě bù huì chī.

10. 他連苦瓜也吃了。

他連苦瓜也吃了。

tā lián kǔguā yě chī.

11. 沒想到

没想到

méi xiǎng dào

12. 依我看

依我看

yī wǒ kàn

6. 好像 hǎoxiàng or 纔得 / 显得 xiǎndé
7. 看上去 kàn shàng qù
8. 徒然 tūrán or 白 bái
9. 居然 jūrān or 竟然 jìngrán
10. 簡直/简直 jiǎnzhí
11. 没想到 méi xiǎng dào
12. 依我看 yī wǒ kàn

A-Not-A questions (*see* Questions: Verb-NEG-

Verb questions)

Ability, 68-69

Achievement verbs, 82-87

and aspectual suffixes, 83

and bǎ 把, 190

because (*see* Cause and effect)

before (*see* Sequence)

bèi 被 and passives, 240-242

bǐ 比, (*see* Comparison, more/than)

but (*see* Contrast)

cái 才, 89, 99, 101-102, 216-217

Calendar time, 28-29

Cause and effect, 208, 230-232

Certainty, 97-99

Change of state (*see* S-T)

chùle . . . yǐwài 除了 . . . 以外 (*see* Focusing

constructions)

Classifiers, 2, 23-26

Clock time, 30-34

Commands (*see* Suggestions)

Common nouns, 16-17, 23, 37, 38

Comparative, 54, 196

Comparison, 195-207

equal to, 200-201, 204-205

including the activity in the comparison, 203-205

Approximation, 5-7, 102

Aspect:

aspectual suffixes

and achievement verbs, 83

and activity verbs, 73-74

and resultative verbs, 136-7

and stative verbs, 52-53, 78-79

V-T (perfective aspect), 119-128

Index

V-着 zhe (durative aspect), 128-131

V-過/guo (experiential suffix), 131-134

Auxiliary verbs, 68

ba 被, 247

bǎ 把, 116, 183-184, 190-194

because (*see* Cause and effect)

before (*see* Sequence)

bèi 被 and passives, 240-242

bǐ 比, (*see* Comparison, more/than)

but (*see* Contrast)

cái 才, 89, 99, 101-102, 216-217

Calendar time, 28-29

Cause and effect, 208, 230-232

Certainty, 97-99

Change of state (*see* S-T)

chùle . . . yǐwài 除了 . . . 以外 (*see* Focusing

constructions)

Classifiers, 2, 23-26

Clock time, 30-34

Commands (*see* Suggestions)

Common nouns, 16-17, 23, 37, 38

Comparative, 54, 196

Comparison, 195-207

equal to, 200-201, 204-205

including the activity in the comparison, 203-205

Approximation, 5-7, 102

Aspect:

aspectual suffixes

and achievement verbs, 83

and activity verbs, 73-74

and resultative verbs, 136-7

and stative verbs, 52-53, 78-79

V-T (perfective aspect), 119-128

Chapter 14

1. 實際上/實際上 shíjíshàng or

其實/qíshí

好像/hǎoxiàng or 纔得/显得 xiǎndé

白 bái or 徒然 túnán

竟然/jìngrán or 居然 jūrán

據我所知/据我所知 jù wǒ suǒ zhī

- Contrast:
 adverbial contrast connectors, 224-225
 ér 而 and/but, 210
 indicating contrast with shì 是, 225
 paired contrast connectors, 224
 sentence initial contrast connectors, 225-226
- Copula (see shì 是)
 Coreference (see Identity of reference)
 Covers (see Prepositions)
- de 的:
 and comparison structures, 203-205
 and extent phrases, 62-63
 and intensifiers, 61-62
 and potential suffix, 144+146
 and resultative verbs, 140-144
 and verb modification, 77-78
 de shíhou 的時候, 222-224
 de 的 and modification of verbs by manner adverbs, 79
 de 的 (see Noun and NP modification)
 Decimal fractions, 8, 12-13
 Direction:
 directional expressions as resultative endings, 182-183
 directional movement, 180-181
 and jù 究, 100
 potential form in directional expressions, 143-144
 and prepositions, 111-113
 Discounts, 13-15
 Disjunction, 212-215
 Disposal construction (see bǎ 把)
 Distance, 185-189
 dōu 都, 90-93
 Double le 了, 128
 Durational aspect (zhe 着), 53, 73, 128-130
- Emphasis:
 with de 的, 234 n.
 with shì 是, 50 n.
equal to (see Comparison)
even if (see Conditionality)
even more (see Comparative)
even though (see Contrast)
 Experiential aspect (see guo 過/過)
 Extent modification (modification by extent phrases), 62-65
 Final particles, 246-251
 Focusing constructions:
 chñfile ... yíwài 除了 ... 以外, 237-238
 lián NP yě/dóu 還/連 NP 也/都, 239-240
 passives, 240-242
 shì ... de 是 ... 的, 234-7
 Fractions, 9-12
 Frequency:
 and achievement verbs, 83
 and activity verbs, 74-75
 adverbs, 94-95
 and stative verbs, 53
 Future
 and adverb zài 在, 94
 and hùi 會/會, 68
 and kuài yào 快要, 119
- General time, 72, 82
 Grammatical category shifts, 48-49, 85-87
 guo 過/過 (Experiential suffix), 131-134
 Habitual time (see General time)
 hái 還/還, 93-94, 124, 132, 210
 Human and animal reference points, 181
 Identity of reference, 18, 20-22
if (see Conditionality)
- Inchoativity (see S-了)
 Inclusion, 93-94
 Indefinite expressions, 23, 93, 165-168
 Intensifiers and modification of stative verbs, 53-55, 61-62
 Interrogatives (see Questions)
 jù 究:
 and identification, 100
 and sequence, 126
 and uniqueness, 99-101
less than (see Comparison)
 le 了 (see V- le 了 and S le 了)
 lián NP yě/dóu 還/連 NP 也/都 (see Focusing constructions)
 Location, 82, 111, 172-179
 ma 吗/嗎 (see Questions, Yes-No questions)
 Manner adverbs, 77-79
 Measures (see Classifiers)
 méi yǒu 沒有 (see Comparison, less than)
 Modals (and English modal auxiliary verbs), 68
 Money, 35-36
more than (see Comparison)
 Movement:
 directional expressions, 180-181
 directional expressions as resultative endings, 182-183
 and prepositions, 111-113
 and relocation verbs, 183-185
 Narrative presupposition, 208
 Narrative sequence, 101, 215-219
 ne 兒, (see Final particles)
 Negation:
 and achievement verbs, 82
 and activity verbs, 72
 and adverbs, 89-90, 105
 and méi 沒, 82, 124, 152
- and manner adverbials, 78-79
 and potential endings, 140-141
 and resultative verb endings, 137
 and S- 了, 120
 and shī 是, 66
 and stative verbs, 51-52
 and Verb-NEG-Verb questions, 47
 and NP modification:
 location phrases as NP modifiers, 175-176
 NP modification:
 with de 的, 37-42
 without de 的, 42-43
 involving specifiers and numbers, 23-28
 Noun phrases, 19-20
(see also Noun and NP modification)
 Nouns, 16-19
(see also Noun and NP modification)
 Numbers, 1-15
 ordinalization (ordinal numbers), 8
 Obligation, 50, 53, 72, 95-97
 Opinion, and 還是/還是 háishi 212
or (see Disjunction)
 Ordinal numbers (see Numbers)
 Paired connectors:
 cause-and-effect, 230
 contrast, 224
 Parallel phrases (see Questions, Question words in parallel phrases)
 Passives, 240-242
 Past:
 and adverbs, 90, 93, 94, 104
 and guo 過/過, 131-134
 and méi 沒, 82, 124, 152

- and sequence, 126-127
and shì . . . de 是 . . . 的, 235
and V-le 了, 121
and Verb-NEG-Verb questions, 150
Percentages, 9-12
Perfective aspect (*see* V- le 了)
Permission, 68-71
Phrase and clausal connection, 208-232
addition, 209-211
cause-and-effect, 230-232
disjunction, 212-215
sequence and simultaneity, 215-224
Possession:
and pronouns, 37 n.
yǒu 有 and possession, 67
Possibility, 68-69, 97-98
Potential suffixes, 140-146
Prepositions, 111-118
Present time, adverbs, 90, 93
Progressive change, 55-56
Pronouns, 16-17, 21-22, 37-39, 181
Proper nouns, 16, 38-39
Punctuality, 99-100
Quantity:
adverbs that indicate quantity, 94
classifiers that indicate quantity, 23-24
numbers + classifiers, 23
quantifiers, 23
Question words
as indefinite expressions, 165-168
in parallel phrases, 169-171
Questions:
content questions, 158-160
questioning a situation, 161
rhetorical questions, 162, 247
Yes-No questions, 147-157
Verb-NEG-Verb questions, 147-150
with ma 吗/吗, 147
with shǐfǒu 是否, 150
Reflexive pronoun, 18
Relative clauses (*see* Noun and NP modification)
Relocation verbs (*see* Movement)
Repetition of stative verbs, 62-63
Resultative complements (*see* Resultative structure)
Resultative endings and activity verbs, 76-77
Resultative structure, 135-145
potential form:
in directional expressions, 143-144
of resultative verbs, 140-143
Reverse sequence, 219-221
Rhetorical questions (*see* Questions)
S-了, 119-122, 128
Sentence connection (*see* Phrase and clausal connection)
Sentence final 了 le (*see* S-了 le)
Sequence:
and cǎi 采, 101
and jiù 旧, 100
and clause connection, 208
narrative, 215-219, 222
reverse, 219-220
in the past, 126
and V-了 le, 125-128
Serial verb phrases, 125-126
shì 是, 65-66, 234-236
Simultaneous situations, 222-224
Speaker perspective, 105-106, 180-181, 243-251
Specifiers, 22, 26-28
Split choice questions (*see* Questions, Verb-NEG-Verb questions)
- Stative verbs:
of ability, possibility, and permission, 68-72
adjectival, 49-50
and aspectual suffixes, 52-53
and duration and frequency, 53
and extent phrases, 62-65
and intensifiers, 53-54, 61-62,
modification by repetition, 62
and negation, 51-52
and noun modification, 37, 43
of obligation, 72
and progressive change, 55-56
shì 是, xìng 性 and yǒu 有, 65-68
Suggestions, 247
Superlative, 197
Time (*see* Calendar time, Clock time, Time phrases)
Time phrases, 235
Tone sandhi, *ii*
Topic, 19-20, 21 n., 91, 233-234
Topicalization, 233-234
Uniqueness, 89, 99-102
Universality, 90-93
Verbs and verb phrases, 46-87
(*see also* Achievement verbs, Activity verbs,
Stative verbs)
Verb-NEG-Verb questions (*see* Questions)
when (*see* Simultaneous situations)
while (*see* Simultaneous situations)
yě 也
both . . . and (yě 也 . . . yě 也), 210
and inclusion, 93
and indefinite expressions, 166-168
linking VPs, 209
Yes-No questions, 147-157
- yǐhòu 以後/以后, 126-127, 215-217
yǐqián 以前/以前, 219-221
yǒu 有:
and existence, 177-178
and negation, 51-52
and possession, 67
zài 在:
and duration, 128-129
and location, 111, 177-178
and punctuation, 99
zhe 着, 53, 73, 128-131
zuì 最 (*see* Superlative)
- yǐhòu 以後/以后, 126-127, 215-217
yǐqián 以前/以前, 219-221
yǒu 有:
and existence, 177-178
and negation, 51-52
and possession, 67
yuè 越 (*see* Progressive change)
zài 在:
and duration, 128-129
and location, 111, 177-178
and punctuation, 99
zhe 着, 53, 73, 128-131
zuì 最 (*see* Superlative)
- yǐhòu 以後/以后, 126-127, 215-217
yǐqián 以前/以前, 219-221
yǒu 有:
and existence, 177-178
and negation, 51-52
and possession, 67
yue 越 (*see* Progressive change)
zai 在:
and duration, 128-129
and location, 111, 177-178
and punctuation, 99
zhe 着, 53, 73, 128-131
zui 最 (*see* Superlative)